

## Welcome: 希望我可以成为你们新概念一册的最后一任老师

补充材料第一册 Unit One

英文中有26个字母

<b>A</b> [ei]	N [en]
B [bi:]	<b>O</b> [əu]
C [si:]	P [pi:]
D [di:]	Q [kju:]
<b>E</b> [i:]	R [ɑ:]
F [ef]	S [es]
G [dʒi:]	T [ti:]
H [eitʃ]	<b>U</b> [ju:]
<b>I</b> [ai]	V [vi:]
J [dʒei]	W [ˈdʌblju:]
K [kei]	X [eks]
L [el]	Y [wai]
M [em]	Z [zi:] [zed]

五个元音字母

now you see

I can say my ABC

ABCD EFG HIJK LMN OPQ RST UVW XYZ,

XYZ now you see, I can say my ABC

英文中有48个音标

分为元音和辅音

20个元音、28个辅音

元音分为：->长元音、短元音

->双元音、单元音

元音：->单元音->前元音

中元音

后元音

->双元音

前元音有4个：[i:] [i] [e] [æ]

[i:]

bee 蜜蜂

tea 茶

pea 扁豆

key 钥匙

see 看见

three 三

[s] [θ] 清辅音

[i]

big 大的

city 城市

with 和

family 家, 家庭

happy 快乐的, 愉快的, 高兴的

little 小的

[z][ð] 浊辅音

以th打头的单词一般是发[θ]、[ð]

thank you 感谢你

family 侧重家庭的成员

There are four people in my family. 在我家有四口人。

home 抽象的家的概念

home road 《我的父亲母亲》

house 房子，一般指独立的院落，更具体的指房子的建筑，结构

**[e]**

bed 床

beg 乞求

red 红色的

men 男人（复数）

never 从来不

very 非常

man can conquer nature 人定胜天

I often see that man in the street.

我经常在街上看到那个男的。

he has a very happy family.

他有一个非常幸福的家庭。

A man is sitting on the desk.

一个男的正坐在桌子上。

You see the green leaves on the tree.

你在树上可以看见绿叶。

Tim ran back to get the black hat and the red bag.

蒂姆跑回去拿到了黑色的帽子和红色的包。

Nothing to fear but fear itself. 除了恐惧本身之外没有什么可恐惧的。

a bad apple 一个坏苹果→坏蛋，惹麻烦，不诚实的人

Big Apple 大苹果→纽约的别称

a fat cat 肥猫→暴发户（贬义）

a hot potato 棘手的问题

A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush. 双鸟在林不如一鸟在手。

A friend in need is a friend indeed. 患难之交才是真朋友。

God helps those who help themselves. 天助自助者。

Hi!/Hello!/Hullo!/How do you do?

(Good)morning/afternoon/evening!

How are you?/How are you doing?/How are you all keeping?

最近你们好吗？

Fine/well. Thank you. And you?/What about you?/How about you?

Not too bad!/Pretty good!/Couldn't be better!/Just so-so./I'm just my oldself!  
还不坏！/非常好！/好的不能再好了！/凑合吧！/我还是老样子！

Nice/Glad/Pleased to see/meet you!

meet 强调第一次见面

see 强调第二次见面，老朋友见面。

Nice to see you, too./Same here.

见到你也很高兴！我也很高兴！

It's my pleasure/honor to see you!见到你很荣幸。

pleasure 幸福，快乐

honor 荣耀，荣誉

Haven't seen you for ages/for a long time./Long time no see.

很久都没有见你了。

Life is happier if it is full of pretty people.

生命是非常美好的，如果生活中充满了非常有趣的人的话。

Life is just a field of newly fallen snow, and where you choose to walk every step will show.

人生就像刚刚下过雪的一片田野，你从哪里选择走路，你的每一个脚印都会显现出来。

[复习]

英文中有26字母

英文中有48个音标

分为元音和辅音

20个元音

28个辅音

元音——单元音——前元音、中元音、后元音

——双元音

前元音有4个

[i:]

[i]

[e]

[æ]

发音要领：舌部尽量往硬腭抬，舌尖轻抵下齿，嘴形发生变化。

这个音嘴的大小应该是食指的大小。

这个音嘴的大小应该是食指和中指的大小。

Lesson 1 Excuse me!

[词汇]

Excuse v. 原谅

me pron. 我（宾格）

yes adv. 是的

is v. be动词现在时第三人称单数

this pron. 这

your possessive adjective 你的，你们的

handbag n.（女用）手提包

pardon int. 原谅，请再说一遍

it pron. 它

thank you 感谢你（们）

very much 非常地

Excuse me 用法：

1、向陌生人问路时

2、引起对方注意时

3、在某个聚会中突然中途要离开一会儿时

4、在发生一个简单的不算太错的错误时

sorry 对不起，用于对别人有伤害时

人称代词	主格	宾格	形容词性物主代词	名词性物主代词
我（们）	I	me	my	mine
你（们）	you	you	your	yours

他（们）	he	him	his	his
她（们）	she	her	her	hers

主格一般作主语，放在句首

宾格作宾语，放在动词或者介词之后

形容词性的物主代词不能单独使用，后面必须跟名词或者其他的词

名词性的物主代词是单独使用的

This is my pen. 这是我的钢笔。

This pen is mine. 这只笔是我的。

yes读降调表示对某件事情的认同，读升调表示询问

v. verb 动词

adj. adjective 形容词

adv. adverb 副词

pron. pronoun 代词

prep. preposition 介词

n. noun 名词

conj. conjunction 连词

be 动词有 am, is, are

am 只能跟在第一人称的单数 I 后面

is 跟在第三人称单数 he, she 后面

be 动词的基本意思：是

she is, he is, it is, Tim is

are 搭配 you, 不管是单数还是复数

you are, we are, they are

I am = I'm

she is = she's

he is = he's

it is = it's

Tim is = Tim's

you are = you're

we are = we're

they are = they're

含有 be 动词的简单的陈述句，否定句，一般疑问句。

This is my handbag. 这是我的手提包。

含有 be 动词的句子如果变否定句，就是在 be 动词后面加 not

This is not my handbag. 这不是我的手提包。

含有 be 动词的句子，如果变成一般疑问句，就是把 be 动词提到句子的前面，大写

Is this my handbag? 这是我的手提包吗？

Is this your handbag?

book 书本

watch 手表

pen 钢笔

car 小汽车

Yes, it is. 是的。

No, it isn't. 不是。

This is my book. 这是我的书。

This is not my book. 这不是我的书。

Is this your book? 这是你的书吗？

Yes, it is. 是的。

This is my watch. 这是我的手表。

This is not my watch. 这不是我的手表。

Is this your watch? 这是你的手表吗？

No, it isn't. 不是

This is my pen. 这是我的钢笔。

This is not my pen. 这不是我的钢笔。

Is this your pen? 这是你的钢笔吗？

Yes, it is.

This is my car. 这是我的小汽车。

This is not my car. 这不是我的小汽车。

Is this your car? 这是你的小汽车吗？

No, it isn't.

[课文]

Excuse me.

Yes?

Is this your handbag?

Pardon?

Is this your handbag?

Yes, it is.

Thank you very much.

pen n. 钢笔

pencil n. 铅笔

book n. 书

watch n. 手表

coat n. 上衣，外衣

dress n. 连衣裙

skirt n. 裙子

shirt n. 衬衣

car n. 小汽车

house n. 房子

pardon 请原谅，再说一遍

I see that man in the street. 我在街上看到那个男的。

Nothing to fear but fear itself. 没有什么可恐惧的，除了恐惧本身。

handbag 手提包

这是我的长裙。This is my dress.

This is not my dress.

Is this your dress?

Yes, it is.

No, it isn't.

这是我的房子。This is my house.

This is not my house.

Is this your house?

Yes, it is.

No, it isn't.

my, your, his ,her

这是他的衬衫。This is his shirt.

这不是他的衬衫。This is not his shirt.

这是他的衬衫吗？Is this his shirt?

Yes, it is.

No, it isn't.

这是她的手表。This is her watch.

This is not her watch.

Is this her watch?

Yes, it is.

No, it isn't.

[复习课文·略]

Lesson 3 Sorry, sir.

[词汇]

umbrella n.伞

please int.请

here adv.这里

my possessive adjective 我的

ticket n.票

number n.号码

five num.五

sorry adj.对不起的

sir n.先生

cloakroom n.衣帽存放处

here 是地点副词

there 那儿

home 家

abroad 国外

downstairs 楼下

upstairs 楼上

downtown 市中心

这些地点副词的前面不能加介词

one 一

six 六

eleven 十一

two 二

seven 七

twelve 十二

three 三

eight 八

thirteen 十三

four 四

nine 九

fourteen 十四

five 五

ten 十

fifteen 十五

祈使句

My umbrella and my coat please. 省略了动词和间接宾语的祈使句。

由一个动词原形开头的句子就是祈使句。

here is 是简单的倒装句

be 动词放在 here 的后面，这个句式就可以成为简单的倒装句式。

My ticket is here. 我的票在这。

Here is my ticket. Here's my ticket.

she's

he's

you're

Here is my watch. 我的手表在这。

Here is my umbrella. 我的伞在这。

number

No.

No. five

mister: 加在男性的姓氏前面

sir: polite form used in addressing a man especially in a shop or by children talking to male teachers

对男性一种比较有礼貌的称呼或学生对男性老师的一种称呼或下级对上级的称呼

gentleman 绅士，对男性比较有礼貌的称呼，在公众场合最得体的称呼

guy 在美国英语中对男性一种不正式的称呼，家伙

boy 在美语中不正式的称呼

Mister Black 布莱克先生

What can I do for you, sir? 我能为你做什么呢？先生？

我的外套和我的雨伞，请。

My coat and my umbrella please.

我的票在这。

Here is my ticket.

Here's my ticket.

非常感谢你，先生。

Thank you, sir.

我的是五号。

Number five.

你的雨伞在这。

Here is your umbrella.

Here is your umbrella and your coat.

这个是你的雨伞。

This is your umbrella.

Is this your umbrella?

很抱歉，不是，先生。

Sorry, sir.

是这个么？

it 表示物体它

This is it.

Is this it?

是的。

Yes, it is.

非常感谢你。

Thank you very much.

我的钢笔和我的铅笔，请。

My pen and my pencil, please.

这是我的票。

Here is my ticket.

感谢你，先生。

Thank you, sir.

七号。

Number seven.

这是你的铅笔和钢笔。

Here's your pencil and pen.

这不是我的铅笔。

This is not my pencil.

很抱歉，先生。

Sorry, sir.

这个是你的铅笔吗？

Is this your pencil?

不，不是。

No, it isn't.

是这个吗？

Is this it?

是，是的。

Yes, it is.

非常感谢你。

Thank you very much.

[课文]

My coat and my umbrella please.

Here is my ticket.

Thank you, sir.  
Number five.  
Here's your umbrella and your coat.  
This is not my umbrella.  
Sorry, sir.  
Is this your umbrella?  
No, it isn't.  
Is this it?  
Yes, it is.  
Thank you very much.

省略了 give me 的祈使句

倒装句

number 加数字一般在后面

it 作为物，可以代替大家都知道的物体单数

#### Lesson 4 Is this your...?

suit n. 一套衣服

school n. 学校

teacher n. 老师

son n. 儿子

daughter n. 女儿

[^]

[o]

Is this your umbrella?  
No, it isn't my umbrella.  
It's your umbrella.  
这是你的雨伞吗？  
不，这不是我的雨伞。  
它是你的雨伞。

Is this your pen?  
Is this your pencil?  
Is this your book?  
Is this your watch?

这是你的长裙吗？  
Is this your dress?  
不，它不是我的长裙。  
No, it isn't my dress.  
是你的长裙。  
It's your dress.

这是你的小车？

Is this your car?

不，它不是我的小车。

No, it isn't my car.

是你的小车。

It's your car.

这是你的短裙吗？

Is this your skirt?

不，它不是我的短裙。

No, it isn't my skirt.

是你的短裙。

It's your skirt.

这是你的房子吗？

Is this your house?

不，它不是我的房子。

No, it isn't my house.

是你的房子。

It's your house.

## Lesson 5 Nice to meet you.

[词汇]

Mr. 先生

good adj.好

morning n.早晨

Miss 小姐

new adj.新的

student n.学生

French adj.&n.法国人

German adj.&n.德国人

nice adj.美好的

meet v.遇见

Japanese adj.&n.日本人

Korean adj.&n.韩国人

Chinese adj.&n.中国人

too adv.也

## 补充材料第一册 Unit Two

3个中元音

[ə:] [ə] [ʌ]

一般以舌的中部来发音

[ə:]

work 工作

girl 女孩

nurse 护士

first 首先，第一

dirty 脏的

bird 小鸟

[ə]

around 环绕，围绕

o'clock 点钟

driver 司机

arrive 到达

forget 忘记

famous 著名的

[ʌ]

nut 坚果

country 国家，乡村

color 颜色

must 必须

under 在...下面

mother 母亲

I love my country.

我爱我的祖国。

Another fly-over will be built across that street.

另外一座过街桥将在街上被修建。

You fall in love with my sister!

你爱上了我的姐姐。

It's fun to run and jump in the sun.  
The first person in a class shirt works in my firm.  
Her younger brother's daughter was a driver.

[复习]

I often see that man in the street.  
A man is sitting on the desk.  
You see the green leaves on the tree.  
He has a very happy family.  
Tim ran back to get the black hat and the red bag.  
Nothing to fear but fear itself.  
Life is happier if it is full of pretty people.

先生 Mr.; mister  
好的 good  
早晨 morning  
小姐 Miss  
新的 new  
学生 student  
索菲娅 Sophie

索菲娅小姐 Miss Sophie  
Miss Sophie is a new student.  
她是一个新学生。  
She is a new student.  
她不是一个新学生。  
She is not a new student.  
她是一个新学生吗？  
Is she a new student?

法国人 French  
女孩 girl  
索菲娅小姐是一个法国的女孩。  
Miss Sophie is a French girl.  
索菲娅小姐是一个法国人。  
Miss Sophie is a French.  
她是法国人。  
She is (a) French.  
德国人 German  
美好的 nice  
见到你很高兴。 Nice to meet you.  
遇见 meet  
日本人 Japanese  
Naoko 直子  
直子是日本人。

Naoko is a Japanese.

她也是个新学生。

She is a new student too.

韩国人 Korean

Chang-woo 昌宇

昌宇是韩国人。

Chang-woo is a Korean.

他也是个新学生。

He is a new student too.

中国人 Chinese

你是个中国人。

You are a Chinese.

我们是中国人。

We are Chinese.

他们 they

他们也是中国人。

They are student too.

晓惠是一个中国的学生。

Xiaohui is a Chinese student.

小明也是一个中国的学生。

Xiaoming is a Chinese student too.

[复习单词·略]

Blake

Mr. Blake

Miss Sophie Dupont

Naoko

Hans

Chang-woo

Luming

Xiaohui

[课文]

Good morning.

Good morning, Mr. Blake.

This is Miss Sophie Dupont.

Sophie is a new student.

She is French.

Sophie, this is Hans.

He is German.

Nice to meet you.

And this is Naoko.

She's Japanese.

Nice to meet you.

And this is Chang-woo.

He's Korean.

Nice to meet you.

And this is Luming.

He's Chinese.

Nice to meet you.

And this is Xiaohui.

She's Chinese, too.

Nice to meet you.

[复习单词·略]

介绍他人的时候经常用 This is ...

3个冠词

a, an 是不定冠词

用于：1、可数名字单数前面 2、具有不确定意义的事或名词前面

This is a watch

a 用在普通名词前面， an 用于元音音素（元音发音的单词）前面

a pen an apple an umbrella an egg an hour a university

the 是定冠词，表示特指

Look, look, a man is coming into the classroom.

The man is my teacher.

and 用在句首表示转折

too 一般用于肯定句中

either 也

Lesson 6 what make is it?

[词汇]

make n. (产品) 牌号

Swedish adj. 瑞典的

English adj. 英国的

American adj. 美国的

Italian adj. 意大利的

Volvo n. 沃尔沃['vɒlvəʊ]

Peugeot n. 标致

Mercedes n. 梅赛德斯['mɜ:sidi:z]

Toyota n. 丰田

Daewoo n. 大宇

Mini n. 迷你

Ford n. 福特

Fiat n. 菲亚特[fiət, 'fi:æt]

## Exercise A

Alice is a student. She isn't German. She is French.

This is her car. It is a French car.

Hans is a student. He isn't French. He is German.

This is his car. It is a German car.

### 选择疑问句

她是一个法国的学生。She is a French student.

她不是一个法国的学生。She isn't a French student.

她是一个英国的学生。She's an English student.

她是一个法国的学生吗？Is she a French student?

她是一个法国的学生还是一个英国的学生？

选择疑问句的标志词是 or

Is she a French student or an English student?

选择疑问句的回答必须要用完整的句子回答

选择疑问句的语调为前升后降

worker teacher

他是一个工人还是一个老师？

Is he a worker or a teacher?

他不是一个工人，他是老师。

He isn't a worker, he's a teacher.

她是一个中国的老师还是日本的老师？

Is she a Chinese teacher or a Japanese teacher?

她不是中国的老师，她是日本的老师。

She isn't a Chinese teacher, she's a Japanese [(teacher)无板书，但有语音].

他是一个德国的学生还是一个意大利的学生？

German Italian

Is he a German student or a Italian student?

他不是一个德国的学生，他是意大利的学生。

He isn't a German student, he is an Italian student.

she's he's [it's]

它是一辆法国的车还是一辆日本的车？

Is it a French car or a Japanese car?

它不是一辆法国的车，它是一辆日本的车。

It isn't a French car, it's a Japanese car.

这是一辆福特车。

This is a Ford.

它是一辆美国的车还是一辆英国的车？

Is it an American car or an English car?

它不是一辆英国的车，它是一辆美国的车。

It isn't an English car, it's an American car.

这是一辆丰田。

This is a Toyota.

它是一辆韩国车还是一辆日本车？

Is it a Korean car or a Japanese car?

它不是一辆韩国车，它是一辆日本车。

It isn't a Korean car, it's a Japanese car.

#### Exercise B

This a Miss Sophie Dupont.

Is she a French student or a Swedish student?

She isn't a Swedish student. She's a French student.

This is a Volvo.

Is it a Swedish car or a French car?

It isn't a French car. It's a Swedish car.

This is Naoko.

Is she a Japanese student or a German student?

She isn't a German student. She's a Japanese student.

This is Peugeot.

Is it a French car or a German car?

It isn't a German car. It's a French car.

This is a Mini.

Is it an English car or an America car?

It is an America car. It's an English car.

This is Luming.

Is he a Chinese student or an English student?

He isn't an English student. He's a Chinese student.

What mark[笔误，应为make] is it? 它是什么牌子的？

It's a Volvo.

It's a Swedish car.

It's a Peugeot.

It's a French car.

It's a Mercedes.

It's a German car.

It's a Toyota.

It's a Japanese car.

It's a Daewoo.

It's a Korean car.

It's a Mini.

It's a English car.

It's a Ford.

It's an American car.

It's a Fiat.

It's an Italian car.

Good evening.

It's nice to see you again here.

Life is what happens to us while we are making other plans.

生活就是经常发生的一些偶然。

Lesson 7 Are you a teacher?

[词汇]

I pron. 我

am v. be动词现在时的第一人称单数

are v. be动词现在时复数

name n. 名字

what adj.&pron. 什么

nationality n. 国籍

job n. 工作

keyboard n. 电脑键盘

operator n. 操作人员

engineer n. 工程师

operator ['ɒpəreɪtə]

What's your name? 你叫什么名字?

My name is Lucy?

What's her name? 她叫什么名字?

Her name is...

What's his name? 他叫什么名字?

His name is...

这是一个新学生。 This is a new student.

她的名字叫索菲娅。 Her name is Sophie.

这是他的老师。 This is his teacher.

他的名字叫罗伯特。 His name is Robert.

我的老师是男的。 My teacher is a man.

他的名字叫什么? What is his name.

这是我的女儿。 This is my daughter.

她的名字叫什么? What is her name.

这是他的太太。 This is his wife.

她的名字叫什么? What is her name.

what 特殊疑问词?

where [weə] 什么地方

who [hu:] 谁

when [wen] 什么时候

which [witʃ] 哪个, 哪一个

why [wai] 为什么

whom [hu:m, hum] 谁（宾格）

What make is it? 它是什么牌子？

What color is it? 它是什么颜色的？

What nationality...?

nation n. 国家

national adj. 国家的，民族的

nationality n. 国籍

country ['kʌntri] n. 国家 How many countries are there in the world?

nation n. 国家，富有人文色彩的

land [lənd] n. 国家，多用于文学作品

state [steit] n. 国家，表示政治的概念

homeland, motherland 祖国

work [wɜ:k] n. 工作，广义的概念

task [tɑ:sk] n. 工作，任务

job [dʒɒb] n. 工作，有报酬的工作，既可以是体力的，也可以是脑力的

key [ki:] n. 钥匙

board [bɔ:d] n. 木板

blackboard n. 黑板

operator ['ɒpəreɪtə] n. 操作人员

engineer [ˌendʒɪ'niə] n. 工程师

[课文]

I am a new students.

My name's Robert.

Nice to meet you.

My name's Sophie.

Are you French?

Yes, I am.

Are you French, too?

No, I am not.

What nationality are you?

I'm Italian.

Are you a teacher?

No, I'm not.

What's your job?

I'm a keyboard operator.

What's your job?

I'm an engineer.

Robert ['rɒbət] 罗伯特

Italian [i'tæljən] 意大利

American [ə'merikən] 美国人

Swedish ['swi:diʃ] 瑞典人

He is a keyboard operator.

Is he a keyboard operator.

What's her job?

What's his job?

What nationality is she?

What nationality is he?

补充材料P4

Fill in blanks with a/an.

1. Stella is (a) student, and she studies in (a) university. She is (an) America.
  2. How many days are there in (a) year? How many minutes are there in (an) hour?
  3. Our Teacher is talking with (an) old man from (/)France.
- There is (an) oil painting on the wall.

Lesson 8 What's your job?

policeman [pə'li:smən] n. 警察

policewoman [pə'li:s,wumən] n. 女警察

taxi driver ['tæksi-'draivə] n. 出租汽车司机

air hostess [eə-'həustəs] n. 空中小姐

postman ['pəustmən] n. 邮递员

nurse [nə:s] n. 护士

mechanic [mi'kænik] n. 机械师

hairdresser ['heədresə] n. 理发师

housewife ['hauswaif] n. 家庭妇女

milkman ['milkmen] n. 送牛奶的人

注意重音符号 '

housewife ['hauswaif]

housewife ['hauswulf]

Exercises A

Complete these sentences using am or is

Example: My name (is) Xiaohui. I (am) Chinese.

1. My name (is) Robert. I (am) a student. I (am) Italian.
2. Sophie (is) not Italian. She (is) French.
3. Mr. Blake (is) my teacher. He (is) not French.

Exercises B [笔误，应为：Exercises]

Example:

keyboard [笔误，应为： keyboard] operator

What's her job? Is she a keyboard operator? Yes, she is.  
engineer

What's his job? Is he an engineer? Yes, he is.

1 policeman

6 nurse

2 policewoman

7 mechanic

3 taxi driver

8 hairdresser

4 air hostess

9 housewife

5 postman

10 milkman

1 policeman

What's his job? Is he a policeman? Yes, he is.

2 policewoman

What's her job? Is she a policewoman? Yes, she is.

3 taxi driver

What's his job? Is he a taxi driver? Yes, he is.

4 air hostess

What's her job? Is she an air hostess? Yes, she is.

5 postman

What's his job? Is he a postman? Yes, he is.

6 nurse

What's her job? Is she a nurse? Yes, she is.

7 mechanic

What's his job? Is he a mechanic? Yes, he is.

8 hairdresser

What's her job? Is she a hairdresser? Yes, she is.

9 housewife

What's her job? Is she a housewife? Yes, she is.

10 milkman

What's his job? Is he a milkman? Yes, he is.

[What's your job?]

I'm a policeman.

I'm a policewoman.

I'm a taxi driver.

I'm an air hostess.

I'm a postman.

I'm a nurse.

I'm a mechanic.

I'm a hairdresser.

I'm a housewife.

I'm a milkman.

11 eleven  
12 twelve  
13 thirteen  
14 fourteen  
15 fifteen  
16 sixteen  
17 seventeen  
18 eighteen  
19 nineteen  
20 twenty

### 语音强化训练

#### 后元音

[ɑ:] fast, card, park, last, hard, dark

[ɔ] dog, bottle, boss, shop, got, job

[ɔ:] form, door, talk, horse, before, walk

[u] put, good, should, book, cook, sugar

[u:] mood, food, tooth, move, shoe, school

后元音，用舌的兵部感觉发音

fast 快速的

card 卡片

park 公园；停车

dark 黑暗的

dog 狗

bottle 瓶子

boss 老板

shop 商店

got 获得

job 工作

form 形成 [from 从]

door 门

talk 说话，谈话

horse 马

before 从前，在……之前

walk 走路，散步

put 放下，放置

good 好的

should 应该

book 书；订票

cook 烹饪；厨师；cooker 炉具

sugar [ˈʊgə] 糖

mood 心情，情绪  
food 食物  
tooth 牙齿  
move 移动；感动  
shoe 鞋  
school 学校

开场白

What you get is a living.

[获得是一种生存/生活方式]

What you give is a life.

[给予是一种生命价值。]

[复习]

I often see that man in the street.

He has a very happy family.

A man is sitting on the desk.

You see the green leaves on the tree.

Tim ran back to get the black hat and the red bag.

I love my country.

Another flyover will be built across that street.

Nothing to fear but fear itself.

Lesson 9 How are you today?

[词汇]

hello int. 喂（表示问候）

hi int. 喂，嗨

how adv. 怎样

today adv. 今天

well adj. 身体好

fine adj. 美好的

thanks int. 谢谢

goodbye int. 再见

see v. 见

how many, how much, how long, how often, how far, how soon

how many后面总是跟一个可数名词的复数

how much后面总是跟不可数名词

how come, how goes it

how come: you are very sure about sth.

how goes it = how is it going [最近怎么样]

tomorrow, yesterday

Today is the first day of the rest of your life.

fine 修饰女性漂亮

look see watch

look 强调动作

see 强调结果

watch 观看移动的一些东西

How are you?  
How is she?  
How is he?  
How is Emma/Jim?  
I'm fine, thanks.  
She's fine. He's fine.

[提示]

Hello, Helen.  
Hi, Steven.  
How are you today?  
I'm fine/very well, thank you. And you?  
I'm fine thanks.  
How is Tony?  
He's fine, thank you.  
How is Emma?  
She is very well, too.  
Goodbye, Helen.  
Nice to see you.  
Nice to see you, too, Steven.

[课文]

Hello, Helen.  
Hi, Steven.  
How are you today?  
I'm very well, thank you. And you?  
I'm fine, thanks.  
How is Tony?  
He's fine, thanks.  
How is Emma?  
She's very well, too, Helen.  
Goodby[笔误，应该为Goodbye], Helen. Nice to see you.  
Nice to see you, too, Steven. Goodbye.

Lesson 10 Look at...

fat adj. 胖的  
woman n. 女人  
thin adj. 瘦的  
tall adj. 高的  
short adj. 矮的  
dirty adj. 脏的  
clean adj. 干净的  
hot adj. 热的  
cold adj. 冷的  
old adj. 老的

young adj. 年轻的

busy adj. 忙的

lazy adj. 懒的

fat cat

fat farm [减肥中心]

fatty

fathead [傻瓜]

pretty woman 《风月俏佳人》

play dirty [作弊]

dirty jokes [不得体、下流的笑话]

talk dirty [说脏话]

come clean [坦白]

Mr. clean [清官]

hot air: 空话

busy body: 爱搬弄是非的人

lazy bones

Robert isn't a teacher. He's an engineer.

Mr. Blake isn't a student. He's a teacher.

This isn't my umbrella. It's your umbrella.

Sophie isn't a teacher. She's a keyboard operator.

Steven isn't cold. He's hot.

Naoko isn't Chinese. She's Japanese.

This isn't a German car. It's a Swedish car.

look at

Look at the man. He's very fat.

Look at that woman. She's very thin.

policeman/tall

policewoman/short

mechanic/dirty

nurse/clean

Steven/hot

Emma/cold

milkman/old

air hostess/young

hairdresser/busy

housewife/lazy

that, this

Look at this housewife. She's very lazy.

Look at that mechanic. He's very dirty.

Look at Emma. She's very hot.

Look at that air hostess. She's very young.

Look at that nurse. She's very clean.

Look at my daughter. She's very tall.

Lesson 11 Is this your shirt?

[词汇]

whose pron. 谁的

blue adj. 蓝色的

perhaps adv. 大概

white adj. 白色的

catch v. 抓住

形容词物主代词，名词性物主代词

This is my shirt.

This shirt is mine.

1、特殊疑问词 This is whose shirt?

2、一般疑问句 Is this whose shirt?

[Whose shirt is this?]

This shirt is whose?

Is this shirt whose?

Whose is this shirt?

名词所有格

Tim's Jones' boss's

名词所有格有两种属性：形容词性、名词性

This is Tim's shirt. This shirt is Tim's.

Lucy

This is Lucy's umbrella.

This umbrella is Lucy's.

This is her umbrella.

This umbrella is hers.

Whose umbrella is this? Whose is this umbrella?

[blue movie 黄片]

perhaps 表示可能但是不肯定

maybe

white-collar [白领] blue-collar [蓝领] pink-collar [一般由妇女从事的工作]

white book [白皮书] white lie [善意的谎言] True Lie [《真实的谎言》]

White House [白宫] White Hall

as white as snow

[提示]

Whose shirt is that? Whose is that shirt?

Is this your shirt, Dave? Is this shirt yours?

No, sir. It's not my shirt. This shirt is not mine.

This is my shirt. My shirt's blue.

This shirt is Tim's. This is Tim's shirt.

Is this Tim's shirt? Is this shirt Tim's?

Perhaps it is, sir.

Tim's shirt's white.

Is this your shirt?

Yes, sir.

Catch!

Thank you, sir.

[课文]

Whose shirt is that?

Is this your shirt, Dave?

No, sir. It's not my shirt.

This is my shirt. My shirt's blue.

Is this shirt Tim's?

Perhaps it is, sir.

Tim's shirt's white.

Tim!

Yes, sir.

Is this your shirt?

Yes, sir.

Here you are.

Catch!

Thank you, sir.

Lesson 12

Whose is this...? This is my/your/his/her...

Whose is that...? That is my/your/his/her...

[词汇]

father n. 父亲

mother n. 母亲

blouse n. 女衬衫

sister n. 姐, 妹

tie n. 领带

brother n. 兄, 弟

his possessive adjective. 他的

her possessive adjective. 她的

Hans is here. That is his car.  
Stella is here. That is her car.  
Excuse me, Steven. Is this your umbrella?  
I am an air hostess. My name is Britt.  
Paul is here, too. That is his coat.

Whose is this shirt? It's Tim's. It's his shirt.  
Whose is this handbag? It's Stella's. It's her handbag.  
Whose is this car? It's Paul's. It's his car.  
Whose is this coat? It's Sophie's. It's her coat.  
Whose is this umbrella? It's Steven's.  
Whose is this pen? It's my daughter's. [It's her pen.]  
Whose is this dress? It's my son's. [It's his dress.]

Whose is this suit? It's my father's. [It's his suit.]  
Whose is this skirt? It's my mother's. [It's her skirt.]  
Whose is this blouse? It's my sister's. [It's her blouse.]  
Whose is this tie? It's my brother's. [It's his tie.]  
Whose is this pencil? It's Hans'. [It's his tie.]

[补充材料]

辅音音标 爆破音

[p] pea/pat/pair/pet/help/hope

[b] bee/bat/bear/bet/lab/buy

[t] tie/tear/let/tall/fat/that

[d] die/dear/lead/bad/glad/down

[k] pick/back/mark/cook/lake/kind

[g] pig/bag/give/goat/beg/girl

pea: 豆子、豌豆

pat: 轻轻的拍

pet: 宠物

bear: 动词-忍受

[lab: 实验室]

tie: 领带，系（动词）

die: 死

dear: 亲爱的，可爱的，昂贵的

glad: 高兴的

cook: 厨师

lake: 湖泊

goat: 山羊

beg: 祈求

开场白

fable: 寓言

shining stars: 闪烁的星星

happy and excited: 快乐和兴奋

mud: 泥土

Optimist, a man who gets treed by a lion but enjoys the scenery.[一个乐观的人，即使被狮子逼上了树梢，他也能欣赏美的风景。]

[复习]

What you get is a living, what you give is a life.

Life is what happens to us, while we are making other things.

Nothing to fear but fear itself.

Lesson 13 A new dress

[词汇]

colour n. 颜色

green adj. 绿色

come v. 来

upstairs adj. 楼上

smart adj. 时髦的，巧妙的

hat n. 帽子

same adj. 相同的

lovely adj. 可爱的

color<美>

colour<英>

What colour is A?

What colour is your bag(shirt, umbrella, new dress, TV)?

What colour is his tie(her skirt)?

green hand: 生手，新手

green card: 绿卡

green thumb: [θʌm]有特殊园艺才能

green light: 绿灯；特权

come on: 跟着来；拜托了；快停下来吧

here, there, upstairs, downstairs, home, abroad

地点副词前面不能加介词

downtown: 市中心

go abroad, go home, come here

smart: 机灵的，精明的

wise: 智慧的，聪明的（有生活阅历和更改判断）

clever: 聪明（理解力上）；狡猾，精明

bright: 明亮的（小孩，年轻人）聪明的

lovely: 可爱的，秀丽的

beautiful: 美丽的（风景）；漂亮的（女性，儿童）

pretty: 漂亮的，迷人的

elegant: 优雅的

shapely: 形状美观的（身材）

[课文]

What colour's your new dress?

It's green.

Come upstairs and see it.

Thanks[笔误，应为Thank] you.

Look!

Here it is!

That's a nice dress.

It's very smart.

My hat's new, too.

What colour is it?

It's the same colour.

It's green, too.

That is a lovely hat!

Lesson 14 What colour's your...?

A Rewrite these sentences.

Example:

This is Stella. This is her handbag.

This is Stella's handbag.

1 This is Paul. This is his car.

This is Paul's car.

2 This is Sophie. This is her coat.

This is Sophie's coat.

3 This is Helen. This is her dog.

This is Helen's dog.

4 This is my father. This is his suit.

This is my father's suit.

5 This is my daughter. This is her dress.

This is my daughter's dress.

B Write sentences using 's, his or her.

Example:

Steven/umbrella/black

What colour's Steven's umbrella? His umbrella's black.

1 Steven/car/blue

What colour's Steven's car? His car's blue.

2 Tim/shirt/white

What colour's Tim's shirt? His shirt's white.

3 Sophie/coat/grey

What colour's Sophie's coat? Her coat's grey.

4 Mr. White/carpet/red

What colour's Mr. White's carpet? Her carpet's red.

5 Dave/tie/orange

What colour's Dave's tie? His tie's orange.

6 Steven/hat/grey and black

What colour's Steven's hat? His hat's grey and black.

7 Helen/dog/brown and white

What colour's Helen's dog? His[应为Her, Helen为常用女名] dog's brown and white.

8 Hans/pen/green

What colour's Hans' pen? His pen's green.

9 Luming/suit/grey

What colour's Luming's suit? His suit's grey.

10 Stella/pencil/blue

What colour's Stella's pencil? Her pencil's blue.

11 Xiaohui/handbag/brown

What colour's Xiaohui's handbag? Her handbag's brown.

12 Sophie/skirt/yellow

What colour's Sophie's skirt? Her skirt's yellow.

### 问题

it's = it is (指代物体的单数它)

this is 这是…

here it is (口) 地点副词

whose 谁的

人称代词几种情况：物主代词，名词性物主代词，名词所有格

名词所有格：人名+'s “…的” (形容词性物主代词、名词性的物主代词)

形容词性物主代词必须作定语，修饰别的词。

This is my pen.

This pen is mine.

This pen is Tim's.

This is Tim's pen.

对形容词性进行提问，后面的词不能省略。

Whose pen is this?

Whose is this pen?

Lesson 15 Your passport, please.

[词汇]

customs n. 海关  
officer n. 官员  
girl n. 女孩，姑娘  
Danish adj.&n. 丹麦人  
friend n. 朋友  
Norwegian adj.&n. 挪威人  
passport n. 护照  
brown adj. 棕色的  
tourist ['tuərist] n. 旅游者

We are Danish.  
Are they Chinese. Yes, they are.  
Here it is./Here they are.

My friend is Danish./My friends are Danish.  
Is your friend Danish?/Are your friends Danish?  
Yes, he is./they are. No, he isn't./they aren't.

My passport is here.  
Here is my passport./our passports.  
my, our, his, her, its, their  
His passport, their passports,  
Here is his passport./Here are their passports.

case--> cases  
Is this your case?/ Are these your cases?  
My case is brown./ Our cases are brown.  
She is a tourist./ They are tourists.  
Are you a tourist?/ Are you tourists?/ Are they tourists?  
Yes, we are./ No, they aren't.  
Are your friends tourists?  
Yes, they are.

[课文]

Are you Swedish?  
No, we are not.  
We are Danish.  
Are your **friends** Danish, too?  
No, they aren't.  
They are Norwegian.  
Your possports[笔误，应为**passport**], please.  
Here they are.  
Are there your **cases**?  
No, they aren't.  
Our cases are brown.  
Here they are.

Are you **tourists**?

Yes, we are.

Are your friends tourists too?

Yes, they are.

That's fine.

Thank you very much.

Lesson 16 Are you...?

[词汇]

Russian adj.&n. 俄罗斯人

Dutch adj.&n. 荷兰人

these pron. 这些（复数）

red adj. 红色的

grey adj. 灰色的

yellow adj. 黄色的

black adj. 黑色的

orange adj. 橘黄色的

A Complete these sentences using a or an.

Examples:

It is (a) Swedish car.

She is (an) air hostess.

1 It is (an) English car.

2 It is (a) Japanese car.

3 It is (an) Italian car.

4 It is (a) French car.

5 It is (an) American car.

6 Robert is not (a) teacher.

B Write question and answer using our.

Example:

books/red

What colour are your books? Our books are red.

red books

white shirts

grey coats

yellow tickets

blue suits

black and grey hats

green passports

black umbrellas

white handbags

orange ties

brown and white dogs

blue pens

red cars

green dresses

yellow blouses

1 shirts/white

What colour are your shirts? Our shirts are white.

2 coats/grey

What colour are your coats? Our coats are grey.

3 tickets/yellow

What colour are your tickets? Our tickets are yellow.

4 suits/blue

What colour are your suits? Our suits are blue.

5 hats/black and grey

What colour are your hats? Our hats are black and grey

9 ties/orange

What colour are your ties? Our ties are orange

What colour is your father's tie?

What colour are their ties? Their ties are black.

His tie is yellow.

Mrs. White: 怀特夫人

Mrs. Smith: 史密斯夫人

What colour is Mrs. White's dog?

Her dog is brown and white.

What colour are your dogs?

Our dogs is white.

What colour is your brother's car?

His car is red.

What colour are their cars?

Their cars are blue.

How are you today?

relax

Life is like a fable. It is not measured by its length, but by its content.

生活象一则寓言。它并不是由它的长短来衡量，而是由它的内容来衡量。

Eat to live, but do not live to eat.

吃饭是为了生活，但生活并不仅仅为了吃饭。

复习单词

colour 颜色

green 绿色的

grey 灰色的

brown 棕色的

black 黑色的

blue 蓝色的

grey and black 黑灰相间的

brown and white 棕白相间的

orange 橙色的

yellow 黄色的

smart 巧妙的，时髦的

lovely 秀丽的，可爱的

hat 帽子

same 相同的

upstairs 楼上的

here 这里

there 那里

home 家

upstairs 楼上的

downstairs 楼下的

abroad 国外

downtown 市中心

here 这里

there 那里

home 家

地点副词前不能加介词

case 箱子

cases

名词有五种：

普通名词，物质名词，专有名词，集体名词，抽象名词。

普通名词在单数变复数时的[读音]规则

加-s 或 -es

加 -s 后的读音 [s] [z] [iz]

清辅音加 -s 读 [s]

浊辅音[与元音]加 -s 读 [z]

以 -ch -sh -x -s -z 结尾的词加 -es

可数名词单数变复数的规则

1 普通的名词后边直接加 s

a book/ two books

2 以辅音字母加 y 结尾的单词要把 y 变 i 加 es

baby -> babies

3 以 -ch -sh -x -s -z 结尾的单词要加 -es 读音为[iz]

4 以 f 或 fe 结尾的单词要变为 ves

knife -> knives

wife -> wives

5 辅音字母加 o 结尾的单词要加 es

potato -> potatoes

zoo -> zoos

元音字母加 o 结尾的单词要加 s

一个关于读音规则的问题

[a] [e] [i] [o] [u]

如果这几个元音字母在单词的倒数第三位的位置，则发其原来的字母音。即开音节。

live [liv] [laiv]

dog 狗

custom 海关

officer 官员

girl 姑娘

Danish 丹麦的

friend 朋友

Norwegian 挪威人

passport 护照

brown 棕色的

tourist 旅行者

Lesson 17 How do you do? 你好!

[词汇]

employee n. 雇员 [em'plɔi'i:, im'plɔii]

hard-working adj. 勤奋的

sales rep(s) 推销员 ['seilz-'reps]

man n. 男人

office n. 办公室

assistant n. 助手

employ/ employment

I need to employ some people to help me do this work.

employer

employment 工作

一个动词后有 -ee, 是被这个动作影响的人；一个动词后有 -er, 是做出这个动作的人。

-ment 名词后缀

hard-working / hard-work / work hard

hard-working adj. 勤奋的

hard-work 艰苦的工作 This is a hard-work.

work hard 努力地工作

diligent adj. 勤勉的 ['dɪlɪdʒənt]

Sophia is a hard-working girl.

They are very hard-working.

man 也可以表示“人类”的意思。

old

Old man!

man-to-man defence

face-to-face

office building/ office clerk/ office hours/ office worker

office assistant

assist 援助

Lesson 18 What are their jobs? 他们是做什么工作的!

P 36 Written exercise A

1 He

2 They

3 We

4 She/ He

5 She/ He

6 They

sales reps

keyboard operators

mechanics

engineers

hairdressers

teachers

Customs officers

taxi drivers

nurses

air hostesses

housewives

milkmen

postmen

policemen

policewomen

What's your job?

What's his job?

What's her job?

His job is .....

He is an engineer.

She is a keyboard operator.

What are their jobs?

They are keyboard operators.

They are sales reps.

mechanic/ mechanics

man-> men

woman-> women

### 选择疑问句

Are you a teacher or a student?

Are you teachers or students?

We are not teachers. We are students.

Are they mechanics or hairdressers?

They aren't hairdressers. They are mechanics.

Are they nurses or housewives?

They aren't housewives. They are nurses.

Are they engineers or taxi drivers?

They aren't taxi drivers. They are engineers.

Are they Customs officers or hairdressers?

They aren't hairdressers. They are Customs officers.

Are they keyboard operators or milkmen?

They aren't milkmen. They are keyboard operators.

What are their jobs?

Are they mechanics or sales reps?

They aren't mechanics. They are sales reps.

### Lesson 17 How do you do? 你好!

#### Text

Mr. Richards

Mr. Jackson

Nicola Grey

Claire[kleə] Taylor

Michael['maɪkl] Baker

Jeremy['dʒerɪmi] Short

Come and meet our employees, Mr. Richards.

Thank you, Mr. Jackson.

This is Nicola Grey, and this is Claire Taylor.

How do you do?

Those women are very hard-working. What are their jobs?

They're keyboard operators.

This is Michael Baker, and this is Jeremy Short.

How do you do?

They aren't very busy! What are their jobs?

They're sales reps. They are very lazy.

Who is this young man?

This is Jim. He is our office assistant.

补充材料第一册 Unit Six

[aɪ] price/ white/ quite/ ride/ fight/ mind

[eɪ] hate/ waste/ game/ snake/ plate/ shame

[ɔɪ] boy/ soil/ choice/ join/ noise/ employ

合口双元音

发双元音的要点：

1 前重后轻

2 从第一音滑到第二个音

make/ lake/ take/ sake/ wake/ snake/ shame

line/ time/ price/ ride

cat [kæt]

late [leɪt]

发音规则小结：

五个元音字母在单词中处于倒数第三位的位置，并且单词的末尾是 e，则这五个元音字母都发其字母音。

开音节 / 闭音节

a

Do you mind my smoking here?

in my mind

I have no choice.

I'll employ some people to help me to do this work.

Lesson 19 Tired and thirsty 又累又渴

[词汇]

matter n. 事情

children n. 孩子们 (child 的复数)

tired adj. 累, 疲乏

boy n. 男孩

thirsty adj. 渴

Mum n. 妈妈

sit down 坐下

right adj. 好, 可以

ice cream 冰淇淋

Lesson 20 Look at them! 看看他/它们

big adj. 大的  
small adj. 小的  
open adj. 开着的  
shut adj. 笑[笔误，应为关]着的  
light adj. 轻的  
heavy adj. 重的  
long adj. 长的  
shoe n. 鞋子  
grandfather n. 祖父  
grandmother n. 祖母

#### Lesson 21 Which book? 哪一本书

give v. 给  
one pron. 一个  
which question word 哪一个

#### Lesson 22 Give me/him/her/us/them a ……Which one? 给我/他/她/我们/他们一……哪一……？

empty adj. 空的  
full adj. 满的  
large adj. 大的  
little adj. 小的  
sharp adj. 尖的，锋利的  
small adj. 小的  
big adj. 大的  
blunt adj. 钝的

box (boxes) n. 盒子，箱子  
glass (glasses) n. 杯子  
cup (cups) n. 茶杯  
bottle (bottles) n. 瓶子  
tin (tins) n. 罐头  
knife (knives) n. 刀子  
fork (forks) n. 叉子  
spoon (spoons) n. 勺子

#### Lesson 23 Which glasses? 哪几只杯子

on prep. 在……之上  
shelf n. 架子，搁板

#### Lesson 24 Give me/him/her/us/them some…Which ones? 给我/他/她/我们/他们一些…哪些？

desk n. 课桌

特别说明：本文根据新东方第一册网络教程（FLASH）制作，由眼角的泪光整理发布，不得用于商业目的

table n. 桌子

plate n. 盘子

cupboard n. 食橱

cigarette n. 香烟

television n. 电视机

floor n. 地板

dressing table 梳妆台

magazine n. 杂志

bed n. 床

newspaper n. 报纸

stereo n. 立体声音响

预习

教英文歌曲

< When a child is born >

Yesterday I watched a French movie.

It's about marriage, career, daily world and something like that.

It's typical French way to view a psychological problem.

Always find a question for yourself in your life whether you are happy or not.

Life is not a problem to be solved, but a reality to be experienced.

生活不是一个需要解决的问题，而是一种需要经历的现实。

Always find a question for yourself whether you are happy or not.

## Lesson 19 Tired and thirty

### [词汇]

matter n. 事情

children n. 孩子们（child 的复数）

tired adj. 累，疲乏

boy n. 男孩

thirsty adj. 渴

Mum n. 妈妈

sit down 坐下

right adj. 好，可以

ice cream 冰淇淋

### [歌曲]

#### When A Child Is Born

1. A ray of hope flickers in the sky, 一线希望的曙光在天空中闪烁

a tiny star lights up way up high. 一个小星星高高挂在天空

All across the land, 所有的地方，

dawns a brand new morn. 都在迎接着一个新的早晨，

This comes to pass, 这一切的到来，

When a child is born. 是由于一个婴儿的出生。

2. A silent wish sails the seven seas,

the wind of change

whisper in the trees.

And the walls of doubt,

crumble tost and torn.

This comes to pass,

when a child is born.

silent 沉默的

wall 墙

doubt 怀疑

[3. A rosy dawn settles all around

You got to feel you're on solid ground  
For a spell or two no one seems forlorn  
This comes to pass when a child is born.]

4. It's all a dream,  
an illusion now,  
it must come true sometime soon,  
some how,  
All across the land,  
dawns a brand new morn.  
This comes to pass,  
when a child is born.

[朗诵词]

And all of this happens  
because the world is waiting,  
waiting for one child.  
Black, white, yellow, no one knows,  
but a child that will grow up.  
And turns tears to laughter,  
hates to love,  
war to peace.  
And everyone to everyone's neighbour and  
misery and suffering,  
will be words to be forgotten forever.

[单词·略]

[matter]

affair

business

What's the matter?

What's the matter with you?

What's the matter with the children?

What's the matter with your mother?

It doesn't matter.

affair 事情，风流事件，风流韵事

President Clinton had affair with L.

business 商业，事情

businessman 商人

businesswoman 女商人

It's none of your business.

[child->children]

baby 婴儿，宝贝

infant 刚出生的婴儿

twin 双胞胎

orphan 孤儿

[right]右边

all right 好的

That's all right. 没关系。

Are you all right? 你好了吗？

Are you all right now? 你现在好了吗？

Is your brother all right now?

Are the children all right now?

there be 句型：表示某处有某物

there is + 可数名词的单数/不可数名词

there are + 可数名词的复数形式

介词

on, in

on 在...上面

in 在...里面

on the desk 在桌子上

in the box 在盒子里

There is a tie on the desk.

There are five books in the box.

变成否定句

There isn't a tie on the desk.

变成疑问句

Is there a tie on the desk?

肯定回答：

Yes, there is.

否定回答：

No, there isn't.

There aren't five books in the box.

Are there five books in the box?

肯定回答：

Yes, there are.

否定回答：

No, there aren't.

ice cream

ice cream man

There is an ice cream man there.

那有个卖冰淇淋的人。

There are two ice cream men there.

floor 地板

on the floor 在地板上

There is a girl on the floor.

glass 玻璃杯

There is a pen in the glass.

There are ten books in the box.

[课文]

What's the mater[笔误，应为matter], children?

We are tired and thirsty, Mum.

Sit down here.

Are you all right now?

No, we aren't.

Look!

There's an ice cream man.

Two ice creams please.

Here you are, children.

Thanks, Mum.

These ice creams are nice.

Are you all right now?

Yes, we are, thank you.

This ice cream is very nice.

这块冰淇淋非常好吃。

These ice creams are very nice.

[词汇]

big adj. 大的

small adj. 小的

open adj. 开着的

shut adj. 笑着的

light adj. 轻的

heavy adj. 重的

long adj. 长的

shoe n. 鞋子

grandfather n. 祖父

grandmother n. 祖母

Written exercises 书面练习A page 40

1 are

2 is

3 is

4 are

5 are

6 am

Written exercises 书面练习B page 40

his shoes(dirty)/clean

Are his shoes dirty or clean?

They are not dirty. They are clean.

1 Are the children tired or thirsty?

They are not tired. They are thirsty.

2 Are the postman[笔误，应为postmen] cold or hot?

They are not cold. They are hot.

3 Are the hairdressers thin or fat?

They are not thin. They are fat.

4 Are the shoes small or big?

They are not small. They are big.

5 Are the shops shut or open?

They are not shut. They are open.

6 Are his cases heavy or light?

They are not heavy. They are light.

7 Are grandmother and grandfather young or old?

They are not young. They are old.

8 Are their hats old or new?

They are not old. They are new.

trousers 裤子

10 Are his trousers short or long?

They are not short. They are long.

Lesson 21 Which book?

[词汇]

give v. 给

one pron. 一个

which question word 哪一个

Lesson 22 Give me/him/her/us/them a ...Which one?

empty adj. 空的

full adj. 满的

large adj. 大的

little adj. 小的

sharp adj. 尖的，锋利的

small adj. 小的

big adj. 大的

blunt adj. 钝的

box (boxes) n. 盒子，箱子 boxes

glass (glasses) n. 杯子 glasses

cup (cups) n. 茶杯

bottle (bottles) n. 瓶子

tin (tins) n. 罐头

knife (knives) n. 刀子 knives

fork (forks) n. 叉子

spoon (spoons) n. 勺子

[词汇(Lesson 21) • 略]

[give v. 给]

offer 提供

provide 免费提供

supply 供应

donate 捐赠 [dəu'neit]

contribute

Teaching gives me a lot of pleasure.

I have contributed all my life to teaching career.

sb.某人

sth.某事

give sb.sth.

give sth. to sb.

第一人称宾格： me

第三人称复数宾格： them

女性她的宾格： her

男性他的宾格： him

Give me a pen please.

请给我一支钢笔。

Give a pen to me please.

Give them a box please.

Give a box to them please.

[课文]

Give me a book please, Jane.[Give a book to me please, Jane.]

Which book?

This one?

No, not that one. The red one.

This one?

Yes, please.

Here you are.

Thank you.

[词汇(Lesson 22) • 略]

Written exercises 书面练习 A

1 his/her

2 our

3 his

4 their

5 her

6 his

Written exercises 书面练习 B

book/ this blue/ that red

1 cup/ this dirty/ that clean

Give me a cup please.

Which one? This dirty one?

No, not this dirty one. That clean one.

Here you are.

Thank you.

2 glass/ this empty/ that full

Give me a glass please.

Which one? This empty one?

No, not this empty one. That full one.

3 bottle/ this large/ that small

Give me a bottle[笔误，应为bottle] please.

Which one? This large one?

No, not this large one. That small one.

4 box/ this big/ that little

Give me a box please.

Which one? This big one.

No, not this big one. That little one.

5 tin/ this new/ that old

Give me a tin please.

Which one? This new one?

No, not this new one. That old one.

6 knife/ this sharp/ that blunt

Give me a knife please?

Which one? This sharp one?

No, not this sharp one. That blunt one.

7 spoon/ this new/ that old

Give me a spoon please.

Which one? This new one?

No, not this new one. That old one.

8 fork/ this large/ that small

Give me a fork please.

Which one? This large one?

No, not this large one. That small one.

## Lesson 23 Which glasses?

[词汇]

on prep. 在……之上

shelf n. 架子，搁板 on the shelf

## Lesson 24 Give me/him/her/us/them some…

[词汇]

desk n. 课桌

table n. 桌子

plate n. 盘子

cupboard n. 食橱

cigarette n. 香烟

television n. 电视机

floor n. 地板 on the floor

dressing table 梳妆台

magazine n. 杂志

bed n. 床

newspaper n. 报纸

stereo n. 立体声音响 ['stiəriəu]

介词短语做后置定语

on, in

on the table

in the kitchen

a beautiful flower

a book on the desk

定语从句

The girl I saw yesterday

the magazine on the bed

the book on the stereo

the box on the cupboard

the cigarette on the table

the bottle on the dressing table

the desk on the floor

the book on the desk

The book is on the bed.

There is a book on the bed. 床上有本书。

give me a glass

some 一些

any

some 和 any 跟可数名词的复数或者是不可数名词

some books

some milk

一般情况下，some 用于肯定句中，在表示征求对方意见，并且希望得到肯定的答复时也可以用于疑问句。

Would you like something to drink? 你想喝点什么吗？

any 用于否定句和疑问句

Give me some glasses, please.

Which one?

Which ones? 哪一些

These ones? 这一些吗？

These glasses?

No, not those. [these 这些]

The ones on the shelf.

The ones on the bed. 床上的那些。

The ones on the dressing table. 梳妆台上的那些。

These?

Yes, thank you.

[课文]

Give me some glasses please, Jane.

Which glasses?

These glasses?

No, not those. The ones on the shelf.

These?

Yes, please.

Here you are.

Thanks.

[Give me some glasses please, Jane.]

Give some glasses to me please, Jane.

Lesson 24 Give me/ him/ her/ us/ them some...

[词汇(Lesson 24) • 略]

big

large

little

small

big 不仅指物理量的大小，还指精神方面的大小

This is a big box.

Dengxiaoping is a big man.

邓小平是个大人物。

large 更多指物理量的大小。

There is a large woman.

large man

little 指物理量的小，暗含一种喜爱的意思

Look, that little girl.

small 单指物理上的小

small person 卑鄙小人

[plate]

dish 比较大一些的盘子

some dishes

delicious dishes

Written exercises 书面练习A (page48)

1 her

2 them

3 him

4 me

5 me

6 us

Written exercises 书面练习A (page48)

glasses/ on the shelf

Give me some glasses please.

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The one on the shelf.

1 pens /on the desk

Give me some pens please.

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the shelf.

2 ties/ on the chair

Give me some ties please?

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the chair.

3 spoons/ on the table

Give me some spoons please?

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the table.

4 plates/ on the cupboard

Give me some plates please?

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the cupboard.

5 cigarettes/ on the television

Give me some cigarettes please?

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the television.

6 boxes/ on the floor

7 bottles/ on the dressing table

8 books/ on the shelf

9 magazines/ on the bed

10 newspapers/ on the stereo

Give me some boxes please?

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the floor.

Give me some bottles please?

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the dressing table.

Give me some books please?

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the shelf.

Give me some magazines please?

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the bed.

Give me some newspapers please?

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the stereo.

[词汇(Lesson 24) • 略]

Lesson 25 Mrs. Smith's Kitchen

[词汇]

Mrs. 夫人 Mrs. Smith

kitchen n. 厨房 in the kitchen

refrigerator n. 电冰箱

right n. 右边 on the right

electric adj. 带电的, 可通电的 electric cooker

left n. 左边 on the left

cooker n. 炉子, 炊具 on the cooker

middle n. 中间 in the middle

of prep. (属于) ……的

room n. 房间 in the middle of the room

cup n. 杯子

carpet 地毯  
mechanic 机械工  
nationality 国籍  
air hostess 空姐  
postman 邮递员  
umbrella 雨伞  
engineer 工程师  
keyboard 电脑键盘  
operator 操作人员  
tourist 旅游者  
perhaps 大概，也许  
refrigerator n. 电冰箱  
television 电视机  
stereo 音响  
on the right 在右边  
on the left 在左边  
middle 中间  
in the middle of 在中间  
in the middle of the room  
在房间的中间  
There is a table in the middle of the room.  
There is a bottle on the table.  
empty 空的  
full 满的  
heavy 重的  
light 轻的  
long 长的  
short 短的  
clean 干净的  
dirty 脏的  
hardworking 勤劳工作的  
lazy 懒惰的  
sales reps 推销员  
assistant 助手  
customs 海关  
officer 官员  
office 办公室  
cooker 炉子

[词汇·略]

Mrs. Smiths has a very large kitchen, is that right? [N]  
There is a television in Mrs. Smith's kitchen, is that right? [N]  
There is a refrigerator in Mrs. Smith's kitchen, right? [Y]  
What color is the refrigerator? [White]  
Where is the refrigerator? [on the right]

What is in the middle of the kitchen? [a table]  
what is on the table? [a bottle and a cup]  
Is the bottle empty? [Y]  
There is a very dirty cup on the table, right? [N]  
There is an electric cooker in Mrs. Smith's kitchen, is that right? [Y]  
Where is it? [on the left]  
What color is the cooker? [blue]

[课文]

Mrs. Smith's kitchen is small.  
There is a refrigerator **in the kitchen**.  
The refrigerator is white.  
It is **on the right**.  
There is **an** electric cooker in the kitchen.  
The cooker is blue.  
It is on the left.  
There is a table **in the middle of** the room.  
There is a bottle **on the table**.  
The bottle is empty.  
There is a cup on the table, too.  
The cup is clean.

[It is on the right.]  
The refrigerator is on the right.  
[It is on the left.]  
The electric cooker is on the left.

a book on the bed（介词短语做后置定语）

The book is on the bed.（特指）

There is a book on the bed.（泛指）

on/ in

[refrigerator = icebox]

Lesson 26 Where is it?

[词汇]

where adv. 在哪里

in prep. 在…里

Written exercises 书面练习 A

1 a, the

2 the

3 a, the, the

4 a, the

Written exercises 书面练习 B

refrigerator in the kitchen/ white

1 cup on the table/ clean

There is a cup on the table.

The cup is clean.

2 box on the floor/ large

There is a box on the floor.

The box is large.

3 glass in the cupboard/empty

4 pencil on the desk/ blunt

fork on the tin

The fork is on the tin.

There is a fork on the tin.

The fork is dirty.

bottle is the refrigerator

The bottle is in the refrigerator.

There's a bottle in the refrigerator.

The bottle is full.

pencil on the desk

The pencil is on the desk.

There's a pencil on the desk.

The pencil is blunt.

Where there is a will, there is a way.

有志者，事竟成。

will 意志

Lesson 27 Mrs. Smith's living room

[词汇]

living room 客厅

near prep. 靠近

widow n. 窗户

armchair n. 扶手椅

door n. 门 near the door

picture n. 图画

wall n. 墙 on the wall

on (在物体接触表面) 在…上面

over 在垂直的上方不接触，越过

in 在…里面

into 进入…里面

our of 在…外

near 在…附近

to 往，向

under 在…下面

between 在两者之间

among 在…中间（两者以上）

across 横穿[在物体表面横穿]

through 从…中间穿过

beside 在…旁边

fly over the wall

She is sitting beside her.

This gentleman is sitting near the lady.

[词汇·略]

Mrs. Smith has a very large living room, is that right? [Y]

Is there a television in the room? [Y]

Where is the television? [near the window]

What are on the television? [some magazines]

Is there a table in the room? [Y]

Where is it? [not mentioned]

What is on the table? [some newspapers]

Are there any chairs in the room? [we don't know]

Are there any armchairs in the room? [Y]

Where are the armchairs? [near the table]

Is there a stereo in the room? [Y]

Where is it? [near the door]

What are on the stereo? [some books]

Are there any pictures in the room? [Y]

Where are the pictures? [on the wall]

[课文]

Mrs. Smith's living room is large.

There is a television in the room.

The television is near the window.

There are some magazines on the television.

There is a table in the room.

There are some newspapers on the table.

There are some armchairs in the room.

The armchairs are near the table.

There is a stereo in the room.

The stereo is near the door.

There are some books on the stereo.

There are some pictures in the room.

The pictures are on the wall.

## Lesson 29 Come in, Amy?

### [词汇]

shut v. 关门

bedroom n. 卧室

untidy adj. 乱，不整齐

must modal verb 必须，应该

open v. 打开

air v. 使 … 通风，换换空气

put v. 放置

clothes n. 衣服

wardrobe n. 大衣柜 ['wɔ:drəʊb]

dust v. 掸掉灰尘土

sweep v. 扫

I wish that you have had a very good starting point of the new week.

There are three things men can do with women, love them, suffer for them and turn them into literature.  
世界上的男人能够为女人做三件事情，爱她们，为她们受苦，把她们变成文学。  
literature 文学

When a beautiful woman smiles, somebody's purse weeps.  
当一个漂亮女人微笑时，某人的钱包就会流泪。  
weep 流泪  
purse [pɜ:s] 钱包

Lesson 28 Where are they?

[词汇]

trousers n. 长裤

Written exercises 书面练习A page 56

- 1 There is a pencil on the desk. There are some pencils on the desk.
- 2 There is a knife near that tin. There are some knives near that tin.
- 3 There is a policeman in the kitchen. There are some policemen in the kitchen.
- 4 There is a newspaper in the living room. There are some newspapers in the living room.
- 5 There is keyboard operator in the office. There are some keyboard operators in the office.

Written exercises 书面练习A page 56

books/on the dressing table/cigarettes/near that box

Are there any books on the dressing table?

No, there aren't any books on the dressing table.

There are some cigarettes.

Where are they?

They're near that box.

1 books/ in the room/ magazines/ on the television

Are there any books in the room?

No, there aren't any books in the room.

There are some magazines.

Where are they?

They're on the television.

2 ties/ on the floor/ shoes/ near the bed

Are there any ties on the floor?

No, there aren't any ties on the floor.

There are some shoes.

Where are they?

They're near the bed.

3 glasses/ on the cupboard/ bottles/ near those tins

Are there any glasses on the cupboard?

No, there aren't any glasses on the cupboard.

There are some bottles.

Where are they?

They're near those tins.

4 newspapers/ on the shelf/ tickets/ in that handbag

Are there any newspapers on the shelf?

No, there aren't any newspapers on the shelf.

There are some tickets.

Where are they?

They're in that handbag.

5 forks/ on the table/ knives/ in that box

Are there any forks on the table?

No, there aren't any forks on the table.

There are some knives.

Where are they?

They're in that box.

6 cups/ on the stereo/ glasses/ near those bottles

Are there any cups on the stereo?

No, there aren't any cups on the stereo.

There are some glasses.

Where are they?

They're near those bottles.

7 cups/ in the kitchen/ plates/ on the cooker

Are there any cups in the kitchen?

No, there aren't any cups in the kitchen.

There are some plates.

Where are they?

They're on the cooker.

8 glasses/ in the kitchen/ bottles/ in the refrigerator

Are there any glasses in the kitchen?

No, there aren't any glasses in the kitchen.

There are some bottles.

Where are they?

They're in the refrigerator.

9 books/ in the room/ pictures/ on the wall

Are there any books in the room?

No, there aren't any books in the room.

There are some pictures.

Where are they?

They're on the wall.

10 chairs/ in the room/ armchairs/ near the table

Are there any chairs in the room?

No, there aren't any chairs in the room.

There are some armchairs.

Where are they?

They're near the table.

Lesson 29 Come in, Amy?

[词汇]

shut v. 关门

bedroom n. 卧室

untidy adj. 乱，不整齐

must modal verb 必须，应该

open v. 打开

air v. 使 … 通风，换换空气

put v. 放置

clothes n. 衣服 [kləʊðz]

wardrobe n. 大衣柜 ['wɔ:drəʊb]

dust v. 掸掉灰尘土

sweep v. 扫

Korean 韩国人

Norwegian 挪威人

Swedish 瑞典人

French 法国的

Italian 意大利的

Toyota n. 丰田

What make is it? 它是什么牌子的?

nationality 国籍

What nationality are you?

What nationality is she?

Where nationality are they?

engineer 工程师

keyboard operator 键盘操作员

What's your job?

What's his job?

what are their jobs?

postman 邮递员

today 今天

yesterday 昨天

tomorrow 明天

see 看见

look 看  
watch 观看  
busy 忙碌  
lazy 懒惰  
sharp 锋利的  
blunt 钝的  
fat 胖的  
thin 瘦的  
white 白色的  
grey 灰色的  
brown 棕色的  
orange 橙色的  
yellow 黄色的  
blue 蓝色的  
perhaps 大概  
whose 谁的  
Whose shirt is this?  
Whose is this shirt?  
catch 抓住  
tie 领带  
blouse 女士衬衫  
color 颜色  
What color is this umbrella?  
What color are these dresses?  
upstairs 楼上  
downstairs 楼下  
abroad 国外  
downtown 市中心  
there 那  
here 这儿  
carpet 地毯  
case 箱子  
customs 海关  
officer 官员  
office 办公室  
floor 地板  
dressing table 梳妆台  
sweep 扫地  
must 必须  
shut 关门  
untidy 不整齐  
clothes 衣服  
cloakroom 衣帽存放处  
wardrobe 大衣柜  
open 打开  
air 把...通风，空气

bedroom 卧室  
living room 客厅  
kitchen 厨房  
dust 掸掉灰尘  
Danish 丹麦人  
friend 朋友  
tourist 旅行者  
passport 护照  
Russian 俄罗斯人  
black 黑色的  
employee 雇员  
hardworking 勤奋工作的  
sales reps 推销员  
assistant 助手  
knife 小刀 knives  
child [孩子] children  
thirsty 口渴的  
tired 疲劳的  
right 好的，正确的  
ice cream 冰淇淋  
heavy 重的  
light 轻的  
long 长的  
short 短的  
give 给  
dish  
plate  
shelf

[词汇·略]

[shut 强调关门的过程及方式]

close 强调关门的动作

slam 摔上门

shut up 闭嘴

zip your lips

tidy 整齐的，整洁的

lucky

unlucky

happy [快乐的] happy new year

unhappy

pleasant

unpleasant

情态动词

can  
may  
need

- 1 它是一种具有实际意义的助动词。
- 2 情态动词不能单独做谓语，只能和后面的原形动词一起构成谓语。
- 3 情态动词没有人称和数格的变化。
- 4 含有情态动词的句子，否定句和疑问句都是在情态动词上发生变化。

open the window 打开窗户  
You must open the window.

She must open the window.  
They must shut the door.  
Amy must dust the dressing table  
You mustn't open the window?

Must I open the window?  
Yes, you must.  
No, you needn't.

What must I do?  
What must they do?  
What must she do?  
What must Amy do?

airforce 空军  
air conditioner 空调  
air express 航空快递邮件  
aircraft carrier ['kæriə] 航空母舰  
walk on the air 飘飘然，得意洋洋

[clothes n. 衣服]  
cloth 布

[dust v. 掸掉灰尘]  
clean 清洁  
clear 清除  
wipe 擦去  
cleanser [klenz] 用水清除  
dustman 清洁工  
dustpan 畚箕

祈使句：  
stand up  
sit down

come in  
shut the window  
dust the dressing table  
sweep the floor  
put these clothes in the wardrobe  
祈使句的否定句就是在句子前加don't

What must Amy do?

What must I do?

what must we do?

Come in.

Shut the door, please.

This bedroom is very untidy.

What must I do?

Open the window and air the room. Then put these clothes in the wardrobe. Dust the dressing table then sweep the floor.

[课文]

Come in, Amy.

Shut the door, please.

This bedroom is[原文中为：This bedroom's] very untidy.

What must I do, Mrs. Jones?

Open the window and air the room.

Then put these clothes in the wardrobe.

Then make the bed.

Dust the dressing table.

Then sweep the floor.

[词汇·略]

Lesson 30 What must I do?

[词汇]

empty v. 倒空，使…变空

read v. 读

sharpen v. 削尖，使锋利

put on 穿上

take off 脱掉

turn on 开（电灯）

turn off 关（电灯）

Written exercise 书面练习 A 60页

1 The window isn't clean. Clean it!

2 The door isn't shut. Shut it!

3 The wardrobe isn't open. Open it!

Written exercise 书面练习 B 60页

Open the window!

put on

turn on

take off

turn off

Put on your coat!

Put your coat on!

Put it on!

Turn on the television!

Turn the television on!

Turn it on!

Take off your shirt!

Take your shirt off!

Take it off!

Take off your shoes!

Take your shoes off!

Take them off!

Women lie about their age, men lie about their income.

A man, who can govern a woman can govern a nation.

### Lesson 31 Where's Sally?

[词汇]

garden n. 花园

under prep. 在……这下

tree n. 树

climb v. 爬，攀登

who pron. 谁

run v. 跑

grass n. 草，草地

after prep. 在……之后

across prep. 横过，穿过

cat n. 猫

garden center: 花卉中心

garden city: 花园城市

savage garden: 野人花园

in the garden: 在花园里

under the tree: 在树下

family tree: 家谱

tree ring: 年轮

climb the tree: 爬树

run across the grass: 跑过草地

run after: 在……之后跑

语法——时态:

在第一册出现了八种时态

1 首先了解概念

2 时态——动词变化规则、时间的状态

now 现在进行时

usually, often, always... 一般现在时

already, yet 现在完成时

现在进行时: 表示现在正在进行或者发生的动作、状态

表示现阶段正在进行或发生，但说话的此刻动作不一定进行  
后面加一个将来的时间，可以表示打算做的事情。

结构: S. + be + v.-ing

S. + be + not + v.-ing

Be + S. + v.-ing ?

Yes, S. + be/ No, S. + be + not

What + be + S. + v.-ing?

I am speaking/talking.

Sam is climbing the tree.

listen: 听

We is listening.

I am studying English in new Oriental School.

I am reading Gone with the wind.

run: 跑

sit: 坐 sit under the tree

climb the tree

run across the grass

run after a cat

Sally: 萨莉

What is Sally/Tim doing? What are they doing?

Are they **climbing** the tree?

Is she **sitting** under the tree?

The dog is/is not **running** after the cat?

Is the dog running after the cat?

Yes, it is. /No, it isn't.

now 现在进行时

[课文]

Where's Sally, Jack?

She's **in the garden**, Jean.

What's she doing?

She's **sitting under the tree**.

Is Tim in the garden, too?

Yes, he is.

He's **climbing the tree**.

I beg your pardon?

Who's climbing the tree?

Tim is.

**What about** the dog?

The dog's in the garden, too.

It's running across the grass.

It's running after a cat.

Where is the dog?

In the garden.

What is the dog doing?

It's running after a cat.

It's running across the grass.

How many children?

Who are they?

Tim and Sally.

Where are they now?

tree

What is Sally doing?

What is Tim doing?

She isn't climbing the tree.

Is she sitting under the tree.

Yes, she is.

What is she doing?

Tim is in the garden, too.

He isn't sitting under the tree.

Is he climbing the tree?

Yes, he is.

What is he doing?

The dog isn't climbing the tree.

Is it running after a cat?

Yes, it is.

What is the dog doing?

（树叶） on the tree

（人） in the tree

what about + n.

+ v.-ing?

What about an apple?

What about some milk?

what about a glass of beer?

介词后面 + 动词的-ing形式

drink: 喝水

drink a glass of beer

What about (drinking) a glass of beer?

Lesson 32 What's he/ she/ it doing?

[词汇]

type v. 打字

letter n. 信

basket n. 篮子

eat v. 吃

bone n. 骨头

clean v. 清洗

tooth n. （复数 teeth）牙齿

cook v. 做（饭菜）

milk n. 牛奶

meal n. 饭，一顿饭

drink v. 喝

tap n. （水）龙头

A Complete these sentences.

Example:

Sweep the floor! She is sweeping it.

1 Open the window! He is opening it.

2 Sharpen this pencil! She is Sharpening it.

3 Dust the cupboard! She is dusting it.

4 Empty the basket! She is emptying it.

5 Look at the picture! He is looking at it.

Nicola is typing a letter.

She is emptying a basket.

Mr. Richards is opening the window.

My mother is making the bed.

Mrs. Jones is taking off her coat.

The girl is turning off the tap.

He is cleaning his teeth.

My sister is looking at a picture.

They are looking at a picture.

Tim is sharpening a pencil.

Sally is shutting the door.

She is dusting the dressing table.

It is eating a bone.

Jack is reading a magazine.

Emma is cooking a meal.

The cat is drinking its milk.

Amy is sweeing [笔误，应为sweeping] the floor.

Tim is sharpening a pencil.

He is turning on the light.

The girl is turning off the tap.

The boy is putting on his shirt.

Mrs. Jones is taking off her coat.

B Write questions and answer

Example:

Nicola/emptying the basket/typing a letter

what is Nicola doing?

Is she emptying the basket?

No, she isn't emptying the basket.

She's typing a letter.

1 Mr. Richards/cleaning his teeth/opening the window

What is Mr. Richards doing?

Is he cleaning his teeth?

No, he isn't cleaning his teeth.

He's opening the window.

2 My mother/shutting the door/making the bed

What is my mother doing?

Is she shutting the door?

No, she isn't shutting the door.

She's making the bed.

3 The dog/drinking its milk/eating a bone

What is the dog doing?

Is it drinking its milk?

No, it isn't drinking its milk.

It's eating a bone.

4 My sister/reading a magazine/looking at a picture

What is my sister doing?

Is she reading a magazine?

No, she isn't reading a magazine.

She's looking at a picture.

5 Emma/dusting the dressing table/cooking a meal

What is Emma doing?

Is she dusting the dressing table?

No, she isn't dusting the dressing table.

She's cooking a meal.

7 Tim/reading a magazine/sharpening a pencil

What is Tim doing?

Is he reading a magazine?

No, he isn't reading a magazine.

He's sharpening a pencil.

9 The boy/cleaning his teeth/putting on his shirt

What is the boy doing?

Is he cleaning his teeth?

No, he isn't cleaning his teeth.

He's putting on his shirt.

6 Amy/making the bed/sweeping the floor

What is Amy doing?

Is she making the bed?

No, she isn't making the bed.

She's sweeping the floor.

补充材料 P7

[m] my/man/mad/me/home/famous

[n] no/need/new/hand/pen/nose

[ŋ] sing/song/thank/spring/think/bank

Kate is a narrow-minded[心胸狭隘的] girl.

No need to know that.

The singer sang a famous song.

My mother met some more monkeys in the market.

I love my country.

Another fly-over will be built across that street.

I often see that man in the street.

Tim ran back to get the black hat and the red bag.

I want to go home. I'm hungry.

## Lesson 33 A fine day

[词汇]

day n. 日子

cloud n. 云

sky n. 天空 in the sky

sun n. 太阳

shine v. 照耀 sunshine

with prep. 和……在一起

family n. 家庭（成员）

walk v. 走路, 步行

over prep. 跨越, 在……之上

bridge n. 桥

boat n. 船

river n. 河

ship n. 轮船

aeroplane n. 飞机

fly v. 飞

day after day: 一天一天的

day and night: 日日夜夜

day break: 拂晓

Sunday: ['sʌndi] 星期天

Monday: 星期一

moon: 月亮

Tuesday 星期二

Wednesday: 星期三

Thursday: 星期四

Friday: 星期五

Saturday: 星期六

It's a fine day today.

There are some clouds in the sky.

sky-blue: 天蓝色

sign: 标记

sky sign: 高楼上的广告牌

动词+ing的规则:

jump, jumping

sweep, sweeping

shave, shaving

shine, shining

单词双写的条件

1 必须是单音节单词（音标里有几个元音音标，就是有几个音节）。

2 单音节的单词一般都是重读，且为闭音节。

3 单词末尾有一个辅音字母，一个元音。

sit,sitting

sun,sunning

The sun is shining

be with: 和……在一起

Mr. Jones is with his family.

Mrs.Liu is with those children.

family man: 有家室的人

family doctor: 家庭医生

family tree: 家谱

family planning: 计划生育

family name: 姓氏

There are three/five people in my family.

walk around: 四处走走

walk home: 走回家

walk over: 走过

They are walking over the bridge.

under the bridge: 在桥底下

go: 行驶, 走, 去, 加油

go under the bridge

The ship is going under the bridge.

in the river

on the river

There are some boats on the river.

There is a boy in the river.

He is swimming.

He is swimming across the river.

plane (非正式)

I have to fly. 我必须得走了。

escape: [is'keip] 逃跑 (从被禁锢到逃脱)

flee: 逃走 (慌慌张张的心态)

get away: 逃离, 很快的走 (口)

Questions:

Is it a cold day today? (It's fine day today.)

Are there any clouds int the sky? (Yes. There are some clouds in the sky?)

Where is Mr. Jones?

Who is walking over the bridge? (Mr. Jones and his family.)

Are there any boats on the river? (Yes, there are some boats on the river.)

What are Mr. Jones and his wife doing? (They are looking at the boats.)

What is Sally doing? (She is looking at a big ship.)

What is the ship doing? (The ship is going under the bridge.)

What is Tim doing? (Tim is looking at an aeroplane.)

What about the aeroplane? (The aeroplane is flying over the bridge.)

[课文]

It is a fine day today.

There are some clouds in the sky,

but the sun is shining.

Mrs. (笔误, 应作Mr.) Jones is with his family.

They are walking over the bridge.

There are some boats on the river.

Mrs. (笔误, 应作Mr.) Jones and his wife are looking at them.

Sally is looking at a big ship.

The ship is going under the bridge.

Tim is looking at an aeroplane.

The aeroplane is flying over the river.

fine: (天气) 好

in the sky: 在天空中

some的用法: 修饰可数名词的复数, 以及不可数名词

but: 转折, 但是

be with: 和……在一起

walk over: 走过

look: (不及物动词) +介词

go under: 驶过

fly over: 飞过

Lesson 34 What are they doing?

[词汇]

sleep v. 睡觉

shave v. 刮脸

cry v. 哭, 喊

wash v. 洗

wait v. 等

jump v. 跳

B Write questions and answers.

Example:

the children/looking at the boats on the river

What are the children doing?

They're looking at the boats on the river.

1 the men/cooking a meal

What are the men doing?

They're cooking a meal.

2 they/sleeping

what are they doing?

They're sleeping.

3 the men/shaving

What are the men doing?

They're shaving.

4 the children/crying

What are the children doing?

They're crying.

5 the dogs/eating bones

What are the dogs doing?

They're eating bones.

6 the women/typing letters

What are the women doing?

They're typing letters.

7 the children/doing their homework

What are the children doing?

They're doing their homework.

8 the women/washing dishes

What are the women doing?

They're washing dishes.

9 the birds/flying over the river

What are the birds doing?

They're flying over the river.

10 they/walking over the bridge

What are they doing?

They're walking over the bridge.

11 the man and the woman/waiting for a bus

What are the man and the woman doing?

They're waiting for a bus.

12 the children/jumping off the wall

What are the children doing?

They're jumping off the wall.

### Lesson 35 Our village

[词汇]

photograph n. 照片

village n. 村庄

valley n. 山谷

between prep. 在……之间

hill n. 小山

another det. 另一个

wife n. 妻子

along prep. 沿着

bank n. 河岸

water n. 水

swim v. 游泳

building n. 大楼，建筑物

park n. 公园

into prep. 进入

photographer: 摄影师

picture: 图片

drawing: 制图，素描术

painting: 绘画，油画

portrait: 肖像，画像；描写

sketch: 草图

take a picture: 照照片

paint: 粉刷

cartoon: 卡通片

a photograph of our village

villager 村民

Our village is in a valley.

between two hills

山: hill (不高的小山丘)

mount (名山, 专有名词)

mountain (大型的, 高山)

range (山区, 连绵起伏的群山)

peak (山峰)

on a river (泛指)

on the river (特指)

This is a photograph of our village.

Our village is in a valley.

Our village is between two hills.

Our village is on a river.

another+单数

other+单数/复数

[wife]

husband: 丈夫

spouse: 配偶 [spauz]

couple: 夫妻, 一对

take a wife: 娶妻  
abandon one's wife: 抛弃妻子  
a nagging wife: 唠唠叨叨的妻  
a jealous wife: 妒妇  
a lawful wife: 原配夫人  
a former wife: 前妻

河岸  
bank (银行; 河岸)  
beach (海滩)  
coast (海滩, 专业地理词)  
shore (海滨, 海岸)

banks of the river  
along the banks of the river

in the water (海滨, 海岸)

Here is another photograph of our village.  
My wife and I are walking along the banks of the river.  
We are on the left.  
There's boy in the water.  
He's swimming across the river.

swimming  
1 单音节单词  
2 重读闭音节  
3 一个元音, 末尾一个辅音

school building  
park: 停车

some: 一些 (修饰可数名词的复数或者不可数名词)  
<代词> some of + 名词或者代词的复数 “……中间的一些”  
some of them/us/you  
some of the boys/students

into -> go into  
out of -> come out of

Here is another photograph.  
This is the school building.  
It is beside a park.  
The park is on the right.  
Some children are coming out of the building.  
Some of them are going into the park.

Questions:

1 How many pictures/photographs here in the dialog? [three]

2 Where is our village?

Our village is in a valley.

It's between two hills.

It is on a river.

3 Where are my wife and I walking?

My wife and I are walking along the banks of the river.

A girl is in the river. And she is swimming across the river.

4 Is there a boy in the water? What's the boy doing?

The boy's swimming across the river.

5 Is the picture about our living room?

No, it is about our school building.

6 Where is the school building?

The school building is beside our park.

7 Where is the park?

The park is on the right.

Some children are coming out of the building.

Some of them are going into the park.

[词汇]

This is a photograph of our village.

Our village is **in a valley**.

It is **between two hills**.

The village is **on a river**.（靠近）

Here is another photograph of the village.

My wife and I are walking  
along the **banks** of the river.

We are **on the left**.

There is a boy **in the water**.

He is **swimming across** the river.

Here is another photograph.

This is the school building.

It is beside a park.

The park is **on the right**.

Some children are **coming out of** the building.

**Some of them** are **going into** the park.

Lesson 36 Where...?

[词汇]

beside prep. 在……旁

off prep. 离开

开场白

money/ man/ woman/ life

一个故事

The list of life 生命的清单

be afraid of v. 害怕，担忧

discuss 讨论

travel v. 旅行，传播

make a list of the rest of his life

along prep. 顺着，沿着

quit/ give up his job 辞职

article 文章

If not because of the sickness, I'll never realize how terrible my life was before.

Life is going on as it should be.

Everybody has a date a cancer, that is inevitable death.

Every life has its actual blanks, which ideal must fill up.

Lesson 36 Where...? .....在哪里?

[词汇]

beside prep. 在.....旁

off prep. 离开

Exercise B

boy swimming/ across the river

Where is the boy swimming? He's swimming across the river.

children going/ into the park

Where are the children going? They're going into the park.

1 man going/ into the shop

Where is the man going? He's going into the shop.

2 woman going/ out of the shop

Where is the woman going? She's going out of the shop.

3 he sitting/ beside his mother

Where is he sitting? He's sitting beside his mother.

4 they walking/ across the street

Where are they walking? They're walking across the street.

5 the cats running/ along the wall

Where are the cats running? They're running along the wall.

6 the children jumping/ off the branch

Where are the children jumping? They're jumping off the branch.

7 man standing/ between two policemen.

Where is the man standing? He is standing between two policemen.

8 she sitting/ near the tree

Where is she sitting? She is sitting near the tree.

9 it flying/under the bridge

Where is it flying? It is flying under the bridge.

10 the aeroplane flying/ over the bridge

Where is the aeroplane flying? It is flying over the bridge.

11 they sitting/ on the grass

Where are they sitting? They are sitting on the grass.

12 the man and the woman reading/ in the living room

Where are the man and the woman reading? They are reading in the living room.

### Lesson 37 Making a bookcase 做书架

[词汇]

work v. 工作

hard adv. 努力地

make v. 做

bookcase n. 书橱，书架

hammer n. 锤子

paint v. 上漆，涂

pink n.& adj. 粉红色

favourite adj. 最喜欢的

work [wə:k] [wək]

work/ job/ task/ employment/ labour/ occupation/ profession

employ v.

employee 雇员/ employer 雇主

professor 教授

work hard/ hard work/ hard-working

George is working hard./They are working hard.

现在进行时的三种含义：

1 现阶段正在进行的动作或状态

2 现阶段正在进行，但说话的当时并不一定在进行的动作

3 句子后加将来的时间，表示打算要做的事情

be going to 句型

make a bookcase

What is George doing? He is making a bookcase.

for

He is making a bookcase for his daughter.

be for

This book is for you.

This bookcase isn't for me. It is for my daughter Susan.

bookshelf/ bookshop/ bookstore/ bookseller/ bookmark/ bookworm

case/ shop/ store

paint [eɪ]

paint/ painter/ painting

write/ writer

paint the town red v. 狂欢，胡闹

paint it pink

形容词做宾语补足语

pink collar

blue collar/ white collar

pink lady [红粉佳人]

in the pink [健康]

pink slip [解雇通知书]

语法：

be going to 句型

1 打算要做某事

2 即将要发生某事

to 后接动词原形

be 根据人称的变化而采用不同的形式

make a bookcase

I'm going to make a bookcase

I'm not going to make a bookcase.

Are you going to make a bookcase?

Is she going to make a bookcase for you?

My father is going to paint the house.

What are you going to do?

What is she going to do?

What are they going to do?

What colour are you going to paint it.

George is making a bookcase. Now he is going to paint the bookcase.

What colour is he going to paint it.

He is going to paint it pink.

wait for a bus

What are you going to do?

I'm going to wait for a bus.

What are you doing?

I'm waiting for a bus.

shave

What are you going to do?

I'm going to shave.

What are you doing?

I'm shaving.

do my homework

What are you going to do?

I'm going to do my homework.

What are you doing?

I'm doing my homework.

listen to the stereo

What is your mother going to do?  
My mother is going to listen to the stereo.  
What's your mother doing?  
She is listening to the stereo.  
wash the dishes  
What is your wife going to do?  
She's going to wash the dishes.  
What's your wife doing?  
She is washing the dishes.

listen to the story  
Question:  
How many people are there in this dialog?  
Who are they?  
George/ Dan/ Susan  
Susan is George's daughter.  
Dan is George's friend.  
What's George doing now?  
He is working hard.  
He is making a bookcase.  
Who is he making the bookcase for?  
Who is George making the bookcase for?  
For his daughter.  
What is Susan's favourite colour?  
Pink.

[提示]

George is working hard.  
He is making a bookcase.  
It's for his daughter, Susan.  
He is going to paint it pink.  
Pink's his daughter's favorite colour.

[课文]

You're **working hard**, George. [dʒɔ:dʒ]  
What are you doing?  
I'm **making a bookcase**.  
**Give me that hammer please**, Dan.  
Which hammer?  
This one?  
No, not that one.  
The big one.  
Here you are.  
Thanks, Dan.  
What are you doing to do now, George?  
I'm going to paint it.

What colour are you going to paint it?

I'm **going to paint it pink.**

Pink!

This bookcase **isn't for me.**

It's for my **daughter, Susan.**

Pink's her favourite colour.

Give me that hammer please

me 是间接宾语

that hammer 是直接宾语

Give that hammer to me.

[It's for my daughter, Susan.]

同位语

Lesson 38 What are you going to do? What are you doing now?

[词汇]

homework n. 作业

listen v. 听

dish n. 盘子，碟子

homework/ hometown/ homemade/ homeland/ homesick

do one's homework

lovesick

home alone [小鬼当家]

hear

look

vt. 及物动词 后边直接跟宾语

vi. 不及物动词 后边加了介词才可以跟宾语

Give me an apple!

Listen to the music!

Can you hear me?

dish/plate

dish 大盘子

plate 小盘子

vegetable

prepare the dishes

do the dishes (错误的译法)

main dish/main dishes

made a dish [疑为笔误，冷菜拼盘应为 made dish]

clear the dishes

Exercise

what are you doing?

We are reading.

What are they doing? They are doing their homework.

What is he doing? He is working hard.

What are you doing? I am washing the dishes.

What are you going to do?

I'm going to paint this bookcase.

What are you doing now?

I'm painting this bookcase.

shave

wait for a bus

do my homework

listen to the stereo

wash the dishes

## 语法复习

Nothing comes between you and success.

成功和你之间没有距离。

### 复习语法点

#### 1 陈述句

主语 + be 动词

This is a pen./They are students.

am/ is/ are

否定形式在be 后加 not

#### 2 一般疑问句、特殊疑问句

一般疑问句是以be动词，情态动词，do或does,did,have,has,was,were打头的句子。

Are you a student?/Is she a worker?

一般疑问句可以是简单的“是”或“不是”来回答。

用什么样的动词提问，就用什么样的动词来回答。

be/must/can/do/does/did/have/has/was/were

特殊疑问句是由特殊疑问词和一般疑问句构成

特殊疑问词有：what,how……

特殊疑问句一般不可以用简单的“是”或“不是”来回答，而要根据不同的疑问词来回答。

#### 选择疑问句

以be动词构成的选择疑问句[疑为口误：应为一般疑问句]+or构成选择

Are you a student or a worker?

Is she an American or an English?

在回答选择疑问句时，要根据具体的实际情况来回答。

#### 名词所有格

名字+ 's

#### 代词的用法

主格、宾格、形容词性的物主代词，名词性的物主代词

主格只能做主语

宾格用在介词和动词之后

形容词性的物主代词不能单独作用，后边要跟名词

名词性的物主代词只能单独使用，相当于形容词性的物主代词+名词

名词所有格可以是形容词性的，也可以是名词性的。如果是形容词性的，后边加名词；如果是名词性的，后边不加东西。

#### 介词短语做后置定语

先行词

介词短语+短语

一个词来做修饰成分时，放在被修饰词的前边；而一个词组来做修饰成分时，放在被修饰词的后边。

the book on the desk

### 介词的学习

1 跟在be动词之后（这种情况较多）

2 在普通的动词之后

put on/ take off

v. 行为动词

vt. 及物动词

vi. 不及物动词

动词加介词构成新的意义

学习介词的规则

1 记清介词本身表示的意义

2 1) 跟在be动词之后，表示方位

2) 与普通行为动词构成新的意义

### 名词

种类有五种

普通名词、物质名词、专有名词、集体名词、抽象名词

可数名词的单，复数概念

### There be 句型

1 表示某处有某物

2 使用的类型

1) There is ... + (单数的可数名词或不可数名词)

2) There are ...+ (可数名词的复数)

### 冠词

有不定冠词和定冠词两类。不定冠词都表示“一个”的意义。

可数名词的单数要加不定冠词。

一般的词前加a

第一个音标发元音的单词前加an

定冠词the

主要用于：1 特指

2 独一无二的东西 the moon/the sun

3 用于固定的专有名词前 the Great Wall/the Summer Palace

4 固定的词组的构成部分

### 时态

现在进行时

### 祈使句

1 祈使句是一种无主句，一般表示命令或请求、建议、真正的主语是“你”。

Close the window!

be动词加形容词，表达情感或状态 Be careful!

2 否定形式是在前边加 don't

some/any

1 表示不确定数量的词，意思是“一些”

any 被译为“任何”

some用于肯定句 any用于否定句和疑问句

some/any表示不确定数量，后边加可数名词的复数或不可数名词

some of + 名词的复数（some 相当于代词）

……中间的一些

none of us/ any of the students/any of them

双宾语

有些动词后面可以跟两个宾语，一个直接宾语，一个间接宾语。

一般情况下，物是直接宾语，人是间接宾语

1 人要用代词的宾格

2 双宾语句型直接宾语的用法可以转换成：把物提前+ to + 人

宾语补足语

一个动词+代词或名词+形容词

Paint the bookcase pink!

Lesson 39 Don't drop it! 别摔了!

[词汇]

front n. 前面

in front of 在……之前

careful adj. 小心的，仔细的

vase n. 花瓶 [vɑ:z]

drop v. 掉下

flower n. 花

in front of （不属于同一范围）

in the front of （属于同一范围）

cold front [冷锋]

warm front [暖锋]

front line

front teeth

front row

front page news

There is a garden in front of the building.

There is a blackboard in the front of the classroom.

The vase is in front of you.

Put the vase in front of the window.

祈使句

1 普通动词原形+其它（名词或代词）

2 be 动词 + 形容词

sweep the floor/dust the dressing table

help

Help me!

Be careful!

Be quiet!

Be quick!

祈使句的否定形式是在其前边加 Don't.

silly

Don't be silly!

care n.&v. 护理

skin 皮肤

skin and hair care

medical care/ special care

Cross the road with care!

take care of/ look after [照顾]

care v. 在乎

I don't care about money.

I don't care (about) you.

I don't care (about) what people think.

care for （常用于否定句和疑问句）

She doesn't really care for red wine.

flour 面粉 ['flaʊə]

flower

bloom

blossom

[提示]

do with

What are you going to do?

What are you going to do with the vase?

I'm going to put it on the table.

do

Don't do that!

Give it to me.

What are you going to do with it?

I'm going to put it in front of the window.

Be careful.

Don't drop it!

Don't put it there.

Put it here, on this shelf.

There we are!

It's a lovely vase.

Those flowers are lovely, too.

[课文]

What are you going **to do with** that vase, Penny?

I'm going to put it on this table, Sam.

Don't **do** that.

Give it to me.

What are you going to do with it?

I'm going to put it here, **in front of** the window.

Be careful!

Don't drop it!

Don't put there, Sam.

Put it here, on this shelf.

**There we are!**

It's a lovely vase.

Those flowers are lovely, too.

to do with 助动词

Don't do that. 实义动词

Lesson 40 What are you going to do? I'm going to ...

[词汇]

show v. 给……看

send v. 送给

take v. 带给

1 Send that letter to George.

2 Take those flowers to her.

3 Show that picture to me.

4 Give these books to Mrs. Jones.

5 Give these ice creams to the children .

展示 fashion show/talk show

shower ['ʃaʊə]/take a shower/have a shower

show around

I'm going to show the picture to my mother.

Put on your coat!

I'm going to put it on.

Put on your shoes!

I'm going to put them on.

动词加介词的词组，再加名词的话，可以放中间，也可以放后边，而如果是代词，则只能放中间。

1 Put on you hat!

I'm going to put it on.

2 Take off your shoes!

I'm going to take them off.

3 Turn on the taps!

I'm going to turn them on.

4 Turn off the light!

I'm going to turn it off.

5 Put on your suit!

I'm going to put it on.

6 Take off your hat!

I'm going to take it off.

7 Turn on the light.

I'm going to turn it on.

8 Turn off the television!

I'm going to turn it off.

9 Turn off the lights!

I'm turn it off.

10 Turn on the stereo!

I'm going to turn it on.

What are you going to do with ...?

I'm going to ...

What are you going to do with that skirt?

I'm going to give it to my daughter.

What are you going to do with these newspaper?

I'm going to send them to my father.

What are you going to do with this letter?

I'm going to send it to my Grandfather.

What are you going to do with these flowers?

I'm going to send/take them to my wife.

## Lesson 41 Penny's bag 彭妮的提包

[词汇]

cheese n. 乳酪, 干酪

bread n. 面包

soap n. 肥皂

chocolate n. 巧克力

sugar n. 糖 [ˈʊɡə]

coffee n. 咖啡

tea n. 茶

tobacco n. 烟草, 烟丝 [təˈbækəʊ]

Who moved my cheese?

steamed bread 馒头

long noodle [拉面]/ dumpling [饺子]

Life is just like a box of chocolate. You will never know what you'll get from it.

Don't let others feel better than you.

sugar/ sweet/ candy

sugar candy [冰糖]

sweet heart

dear

sugar report [情书]

news report

sugar daddy

coffee [咖啡]/ coffin [棺材]

black coffee/ white coffee/ coffee bean/ coffee bar/ coffee house

black tea [红茶]/ green tea/ scented (jasmine) tea [茉莉花茶]/ chamomile tea [菊花茶]/ milk tea/ brick tea [砖茶]/

tea break/ coffee break/ make the tea

语法

不可数名词

不可数名词在表示量的概念时也叫部分词

a piece of paper/ bread/ chalk

a sheet of paper/ a kilo[公斤] of water

two pieces of paper/ three sheets of paper/ five kilos of water

不可数名词在表示量的概念时要用某种容器

a bottle of beer/ a glass of milk

bottles/ glasses

five bottles of beer/ six glasses of milk

a box of pens

用容器表示可数名词时, 可数名词用复数

a loaf of/ a bar of/ a bottle of/ a pound of/ half a pound of/ a quarter of/ a tin of

[课文]

Is that bag heavy, Penny?

Not very.

Here!

Put it on this chair.

What's in it?

A piece of cheese.

A loaf of bread.

A bar of soap.

A bar of Chocolate.

A bottle of milk.

A pound of sugar.

Half a pound of coffee.

A quarter of pound of tea.

And a tin of tobacco.

Is that tin of tobacco **for** me?

Well, it's **certainly** not for me!

Lesson 42 Is there a ... in/ on that...? Is there any ... in/ on that ...?

[词汇]

bird n. 鸟

any det. 一些

some det. 一些

Exercise A

There's **a** photograph on the desk.

Is there **any** milk in the bottle?

There isn't **any** milk in the bottle.

There's **some** milk in that cup.

1 Is there any bread in the kitchen?

2 There's a loaf on the table.

3 There's some coffee on the table, too.

4 There isn't any chocolate on the table.

5 There's a spoon on that dish.

6 Is there any soap on the dressing table?

passport/ on the table

Is there a passport here?

Yes, there is. There's one on the table.

bread/ on the table

Is there any bread here?

Yes, there are. There're some on the table.

1 spoon/ on the plate

Is there a spoon here?

Yes, there is. There's one on the plate.

2 tie/ on the chair

Is there a tie here?

Yes, there is. There's one on the chair.

3 milk/ on the table

Is there any milk here?

Yes, there are. There is some on the table.

4 hammer/ on the bookcase

Is there a hammer here?

Yes, there is. There is one on the bookcase.

5 tea/ on the table

Is there any tea here?

Yes, there is. There's some on the table.

6 vase/ on the radio

Is there a vase here?

Yes, there is. There's one on the radio.

7 suit/ in the wardrobe

Is there a suit here?

Yes, there is. There's one in the wardrobe.

8 tobacco/ in the tin

Is there any tobacco here?

Yes, there is. There's some in the tin.

9 chocolate/ on the desk

Is there any chocolate here?

Yes, there is. There's some on the desk.

10 cheese/ on the plate

Is there any cheese here?

Yes, there is. There's some on the plate.

### Lesson 43 Hurry up! 快点

[词汇]

of course 当然

kettle n. 水壶

behind prep. 在……后面

teapot n. 茶壶

now adv. 现在，此刻

find v. 找到

boil v. 沸腾，开

behind the kettle/ behind the teapot

of course/ certainly/ sure

in front of 表示方位

before 表示时间

behind 表示方位

after 表示时间[及顺序]

run after

find/ find out/ look for/ search/ discover/ invent/ explore

We are looking for a lost pen. But it is not sure you can find it.

Discovery

复习语法

情态动词

must

1 本身具有实际意义的助动词

2 不能单独做谓语，只能后边跟动词原形

3 没有人称和数格的变化

4 否定句在情态动词后加 not，一般疑问句则把情态动词提前

can/ can't

make the tea

I can make the tea.

I can't make the tea.

Can you make the tea?

Yes, I can.

No, I can't.

What must I do?

What can you/ I do?

He can make the tea.

He can't make the tea.

Can he make the tea?

Yes, he can.

No, he can't.

What can he do?

What can they do?

What can your mother do?

[课文]

Can you **make the tea**, Sam?

Yes, of course I can, Penny.

Is there any water in this kettle?

Yes, there is.

Where's the tea?

It's **over there**, behind the teapot.

Can you see it?

I can see the teapot, but I can't see the tea.

There it is!

It's in front of you!

Ah yes, I can see it now.

Where are the cups?

There are some in the cupboard.

Can you find them?

Yes. Here they are.

**Hurry up**, Sam!

The kettle's boiling!

There is some water in the kettle.

There isn't any water in the kettle.

Is there any water in this kettle?

It is there./ There it is.

Lesson 44 Are there any ... ? Is there any ... ?

I can see some cups, but I can't see any glasses.

1 I can see some spoons, but I can't see any knives.

2 I can see some hammers, but I can't see any boxes.

3 I can see some coffee, but I can't see any loaves of bread.

4 I can see some cupboard[笔误，应为cupboards], but I can't see any shelves.

5 I can see some[笔误，应删去some] Mr. Jones and Mr. Brown, but I can't see their wives.

6 I can see some cups, but I can't see any dishes.

7 I can see some cars, but I can't see any buses.

bread/ on the table

Is there any bread here?

Yes, there is. There's some on the table.

hammers/ behind that box

Are there any hammers?

Yes, there are. There're some behind that box.

milk/ in front of the door

Is there any milk here?

Yes, there is. There's some in front of the door.

soap/ on the cupboard

Is there any soap here?

Yes, there is. There's some on the cupboard.

newspapers/ behind that vase

Are there any newspapers here?

Yes, there are. There're some behind that vase.

water/ in those glasses

Is there any water here?

Yes, there is. There's some in those glasses.

tea/ in those cups

Is there any tea here?

Yes, there is. There's some in those cups.

cups/ in front of the kettle

Are there any cups here?

Yes, there are. There're some in front of that kettle.

chocolate/behind that book

Is there any chocolate here?

Yes, there is. There's some chocolate behind that book.

teapots/ in that cupboard

Are there any teapots here?

Yes, there are. There're some (teapots) in that cupboard.

cars/ in front of that building

Are there any cars here?

Yes, there are. There're some in front of the building.

#### Lesson 45 The boss's letter 老板的信

[词汇]

can modal verb 能够

boss n. 老板，上司

minute n. 分（钟）

ask v. 请求，要求

handwriting n. 书写

terrible adj. 糟糕的，可怕的

boss/ manager/ owner

leader/ head/ lord/ master/ lady/ chief

head hunter

landlord

Chief Executive Officer[CEO]

year/ month/ season/ week/ day/ hour/ minute/ second

quarter [一刻钟、季度]/ decade/ century

a minute

ask/ request/ beg

ask + 名词或代词（宾格）

ask her/ ask them

ask sb. to do sth.

be going to 句型

Pamela

type a letter

for

The boss is going to ask Pamela to type a letter for him.

The teacher is going to ask the students to sweep the floor.

the boss's handwriting

The boss's handwriting is terrible.

[课文]

Can you come here **a minute** please, Bob?

Yes, sir?

Where's Pamela?

She's **next door**.

She's in her office, sir.

Can she type this letter for me?

**Ask** her please.

Yes, sir.

Can you type this letter for the boss please, Pamela?

Yes, of course I can.

Here you are.

Thank you, Bob.

Bob!

Yes? What's the matter.

I can't type this letter.

I can't read it! The **boss's** handwriting is terrible!

Is the boss in his living room? Where is the boss? -> The boss is in his office.

Who can go into the boss's office? -> Bob can go into the boss's office.

Who is Bob?

Where is Pamela?

What is the boss going to ask Pamela to do for him? -> To type a letter for him.

Can Pamela type this letter?

What's the matter with the letter?

Why can't Pamela type this letter? -> The boss's handwriting is terrible.

typist/ Pamela is a typist.

The boss is going to ask Pamela to type a letter for him, but Pamela can't read the letter, because the boss's handwriting is terrible.

Because/ I can't type the letter because I can't read it.

ask sb. to do sth.

## Lesson 46 Can you ... ?

[词汇]

lift v. 拿起，搬起，举起

cake n. 饼，蛋糕

biscuit n. 饼干 [ˈbɪskɪt]

Written exercises 书面练习 A page 92

Examples:

He is taking his book. He can take his book.

She is putting on her coat. She can put on her coat.

1 They are typing these letters. They can type these letters.

2 She is making the bed. She can make the bed.

3 You are swimming across the river. You can swim across the river.

4 We are coming now. We can come now.

5 We are running across the park. We can run across the park.

6 He is sitting on the grass. He can sit on the grass.

7 I am giving him some chocolate. I can give him some chocolate.

Written exercises 书面练习 B page 92

Can you put on your coat?

Yes, I can.

What can you do?

I can put on my coat.

Can you and Sam listen to the radio?

Yes, we can.

What can you and Sam do?

We can listen to the radio.

1 Can you type this letter?

Yes, I can.

What can you do?

I can type this letter.

2 Can Penny wait for the bus?

Yes, she can.

What can she do?

She can wait for the bus.

3 Can Penny and Jane wash the dishes?

Yes, they can.

What can they do?

They can wash the dishes.

4 Can George take these flowers to her?

Yes, he can.

What can he do?

He can take these flowers to her.

5 Can the cat drink its milk?

Yes, it can.

What can it do?

It can drink its milk.

6 Can you and Sam paint this bookcase?

Yes, we can.

What can you and Sam do?

We can paint this bookcase.

7 Can you see that aeroplane?

Yes, I can.

What can you do?

I can see that aeroplane.

8 Can Jane read this book?

Yes, she can.

What can she do?

She can read this book.

I can put my hat on, I can put on my hat.

but I can't put my coat on.

I can see that aeroplane, but I can't see a bird.

I can paint this bookcase, but I can't paint this room.

I can lift that chair, but I can't lift this table.

I can read this book, but I can't read that magazine.

I can jump off this box, but I can't jump off that wall.

I can make cakes, but I can't make biscuits.

I can put the vase on the table, but I can't put it on the shelf.

Lesson 48 Do you like ... ? Do you want ... ?

[词汇]

fresh adj. 新鲜的

egg n. 鸡蛋

butter n. 黄油

pure adj. 纯净的

honey n. 蜂蜜

ripe adj. 成熟的

banana n. 香蕉

jam n. 果酱

sweet adj. 甜的

orange n. 橙

Scotch whisky 苏格兰威士忌

choice adj. 上等的, 精选的

apple n. 苹果

wine n. 酒, 果酒

beer n. 啤酒

blackboard n. 黑板

## Lesson 47 A cup of coffee

[词汇]

like v. 喜欢，想要

want v. 想

love 爱

fancy

adore [热爱]

care for

cherish [珍惜]

be fond of

be keen on

take to 开始喜欢

I adore my father. 我热爱我的父亲。

重点语法：一般现在时

现在进行时

1 表示正在进行或发生的事情。

2 表示现阶段正在进行，但说话时不一定进行的动作。

3 表示将要进行的动作。

结构

主语 + be动词 + v.+ing

一般现在时

以下几种情况用一般现在时：

1 表示现在的事实或是状态。

It is very hot today.

2 表示现在的习惯或反复的动作。

3 代替一般将来时。

She lives in Paris.

She gets up at 7 o'clock every day.

Do you come tomorrow?

结构：

主语 + be 动词

主语 + 动词原形

主语 + 动词+s(es)：第三人称单数

I like apples.

I want an apple.

likes

She likes apples.

第二种结构的否定要借助于don't

第三人称单数要借助于doesn't

第一种结构变疑问句要把be动词提前

第二种do 加主语，后面是动词原形

Do you ... ? Yes, I do. No, I don't.

第三人称单数：

Does you[笔误，应为she] ... ?

Yes, she does.

No, she doesn't.

do my homework

don't, do, doesn't, does

I like music.

I don't like music.

Do you like music?

Yes, I do.

No, I don't.

[What do you like?]

They like coffee.

They don't like coffee.

Do they like coffee?

Yes, they do.

No, they don't.

What do they like?

What do you like?

What do the students like?

What do the children like?

What do your father and mother like?

He likes sport.

He doesn't like sport.

Does he like sport?

Yes, he does.

No, he doesn't.

What does he like?

She wants an apple.

She doesn't want an apple.

Does she want an apple?

Yes, she does.

No, she doesn't.

What does she want?

What do you like?

What do they like?

What do they want?

What do you want?  
What does he want?  
What do they want?  
What does your mother want?  
What does Lucy want?

do one's homework  
every day 每天  
I do my homework every day.  
I don't do my homework every day.  
Do you do my homework every day?  
Yes, I do.  
No, I don't.  
She does her homework every day?  
She doesn't do her homework every day.  
Does she do her homework every day?  
Yes, she does.  
No, she doesn't.

What are you doing?  
What is she doing?  
What are they doing?

What do/does (人称) do every day?

What do you do every day?  
What do they do every day?  
What does your mother do every year?  
What do the students do every week?  
What does your husband do every month?

动词加 s(es) 规则

一般动词直接加-s

辅音字母加y 结尾，要变y为i加es.

try -> tries

worry -> worries

study -> studies

cry -> cries

s, x, sh, ch, z 结尾的单词加 -es 变化

wash, pass, fix, watch, buzz

wash 洗

I wash the dishes every day.

My wife washes the dishes every day.

pass 通过

I pass the driving test.

He passes the driving test.

fix 修理

fix -> fixes

watch 观看

watch -> watches

buzz 嗡嗡作响

buzz -> buzzes

say -> says

obey -> obeys

频率副词：

often [经常]

sometimes [有时]

always [总是]

usually [通常]

never [从来不]

1 在句子中用在be动词之后

2 用在行为动词之前

3 如果是否定句或是疑问句用在助动词和行为动词之间。

4 为表示强调频率副词可以放在句首或者是句尾

表示时间的词：

一天中的一段时间

in the morning

in the afternoon

at night

every 引导的词

every year

every day

every month

every Monday

every Sunday

every week

[提示]

Ann 安

Christine 克里斯廷

Do you like coffee?

Does Ann like coffee?

Yes, I do.

Yes, she does.

Do you want a cup?

Does she want a cup?

Do you want any sugar?

Does she want any sugar?

I don't want sugar in my coffee.

She doesn't want sugar in her coffee.

They don't like milk in their coffee.

My father doesn't like milk in his coffee.

I like black coffee.

She likes black coffee.

Do you like biscuits?

Does she like biscuits?

honey 蜂蜜

Do you like honey?

Yes, I do.

I like honey, but I don't want any.

Does he like honey?

Yes, he does.

He like honey, but he doesn't want any.

egg 鸡蛋 eggs

Do they like eggs?

Yes, they do.

They like eggs, but they don't want any.

[课文]

Do you like coffee, Ann?

Yes, I do.

Do you want a cup?

Yes, please, Christine.

Do you want any sugar?

Yes, please.

Do you want any milk?

No, thank you.

I don't like milk in my coffee.

I like black coffee.

Do you like biscuits?

Yes, I do.

Do you want one?

Yes, please.

Lesson 48 Do you like ... ? Do you want ... ?

[词汇 • 略]

Written exercise 书面练习A page 96

off/over/between/in front of/behind/under/across

1 The aeroplane is flying **over** they village.

2 The ship is going **under** the bridge.

3 The children are swimming **across** the river.

4 Two cats are running **along** the wall.

5 They boy is jumping **up**（笔误，应为 **off**）the branch.

6 The girl is sitting **between** her mother and her father.

7 The teacher is standing **in front of** the blackboard.

8 The blackboard is **behind** the teacher.

Written exercise 书面练习B page 96

2 Do you like bananas?

Yes, I do.

I like bananas, but I don't want one.

5 Do you like ice cream?

Yes, I do.

I like ice cream, but I don't want any.

6 Do you like whisky?

Yes, I do.

I like whisky, but I don't want any.

9 Do you like biscuits?

Yes, I do.

I like biscuits, but I don't want one.

Everything goes well with you.

I wish everything goes well with all of you here as usual.

There is only one good, that is knowledge, there is only one evil, that is ignorance['ignərəns].

世界上只有一种善，那就是知识，世界上只有一种恶，那就是愚昧。

#### Lesson 49 At the butcher's

[词汇]

butcher n. 卖肉的 ['butʃə]

meat n. 肉

beef n. 牛肉

lamb n. 羔羊肉 [læm]

husband n. 丈夫

steak n. 牛排 [steik]

mince n. 肉馅，绞肉 [mins]

chicken n. 鸡

tell v. 告诉

truth n. 实情

either adv. 也（用于否定句）

hairdresser

at the hairdresser's 在理发店里

kill 杀害

murder 谋杀

massacre 屠杀 ['mæsəkə]

kill the time 打发时间

[husband]

band 6 六级

band 4 四级

music band 乐队

rare

medium 中等的

well-done 全熟的

steak rare

steak medium

steak well-done

[tell]

say 强调说话的内容

speak 讲话。强调说话的动作，讲某种语言

talk 谈话 talk show 脱口秀

chat 聊天 chat room 聊天室 chitchat

dialogue 对话

discuss 讨论

debate 辩论

tell the truth 说实话

tell a lie 撒谎

My mother is a teacher, my father is a teacher too.

music

I don't like music, my brother doesn't like music either.

She isn't Chinese, he isn't Chinese either.

Mrs. Bird

Mrs. Bird doesn't like chicken, her husband doesn't like chicken either.

Who is at the butcher's?

What does she want to do?

Does she want a beef or a lamb?

Is there any lamb at the butcher's?

Is there (笔误, 应为the) lamb very nice?

Why doesn't Mrs. Bird want any lamb?

Because her husband doesn't like lamb.

What about steak?

Does Mrs. Bird want any steak?

Does Mr. Bird like steak?

Does Mrs. Bird want any mince today?

How much mince does she want?

A pound of mince.

What about chicken?

Does Mrs. Bird like chicken?

What about Mr. Bird?

What about the butcher?

Where is Mrs. Bird today?

She is at the butcher's.

What does she want to do?

She wants some mince.

Is there any beef at the butcher's?

Is there any good lamb here?

What does Mrs. Bird want? Beef or lamb?

Does Mr. Bird like lamb?

Does Mrs. Bird like lamb?

Does Mrs. Bird want some steak?

Does she want any mince? How much?

Mrs. Bird

Mrs. Bird is at the butcher's.

She wants some meat.

Do you like beef?

Does she like beef?  
Does she like beef or lamb?  
This lamb is very good.  
But Mr. Bird doesn't like lamb.  
The steak is very good.  
Mrs. Bird wants a pound of mince.  
Mr. Bird doesn't like chicken.  
The butcher doesn't like chicken either.

[课文]

Do you want any meat today, Mrs. Bird?  
Yes, please.  
Do you want beef or lamb?  
Beef, please.  
This lamb's very good.  
I like lamb, but my husband doesn't.  
What about some steak?  
This is a nice piece.  
Give me that piece, please. 双宾语  
And a pound of mince, too.  
Do you want a chicken, Mrs. Bird?  
They 're very nice.  
No, thank you.  
My husband likes steak, but he doesn't like chicken.  
**To tell you the truth**, Mrs. Bird, I don't like chicken either!

to的第一种词性是个介词

go to school

look forward to 渴望，期望

介词后面加动词要加-ing 形式

to的第二种用法：动词不定式的小品词

动词不定式是不能做谓语的

动词不定式可以做主语，表语，宾语，宾语补足语，定语。

[本课中动词不定式做状语]

[词汇·略]

Lesson 50 He likes ... But he doesn't like

[词汇]

tomato n. 西红柿 tomatoes

potato n. 土豆 potatoes

cabbage n. 卷心菜 cabbages

lettuce n. 莴苣 ['letis] lettuces

pea n. 豌豆 peas

bean n. 豆角 beans

pear n. 梨 pears [pɛə]

grape n. 葡萄 grapes

peach n. 桃 peaches

Written exercise 书面练习 A page 100

1 don't

2 doesn't

3 isn't

4 can't

5 aren't

6 am not

Written exercise 书面练习 B page 100

Does Penny like tomatoes?

Yes, she does.

She likes tomatoes, but she doesn't want any.

Do you like potatoes?

Yes, I do.

I like potatoes, but don't want any.

1 Does Sam like cabbage?

Yes, he does.

He likes cabbage, but he doesn't want any.

3 Do you like peas?

Yes, I do.

I like peas, but I don't want any.

5 Do you like bananas?

Yes, I do.

I like bananas, but I don't want any.

7 Does George like apples?

Yes, he does.

He likes apples, but he doesn't want any.

8 Elizabeth 伊丽莎白

Does Elizabeth like pears?

Yes, she does.

She likes pears, but she doesn't want any.

10 Carol 卡罗尔

Does Carol like peaches?

Yes, he does.

He likes peaches, but he doesn't want any.

Lesson 51 A pleasant climate

[词汇]

Greece n. 希腊

Climate n. 气候

Country n. 国家  
pleasant adj. 宜人的  
weather n. 天气  
spring n. 春季 [in spring]  
windy adj. 有风的  
warm adj. 温暖的  
rain v. 下雨  
sometimes adv. 有时  
summer n. 夏天  
autumn n. 秋天  
winter n. 冬天  
snow v. 下雪  
January n. 1月  
February n. 2月  
March n. 3月  
April n. 4月  
May n. 5月  
June n. 6月  
July n. 7月  
August n. 8月  
September n. 9月  
October n. 10月  
November n. 11月  
December n. 12月

英语中的五在句型

1 主语+不及物动词

It rains in spring

The sun rises.

It doesn't rain in spring.

Does it rain in spring?

snow 下雪

winter 冬天

It snows in winter.

It doesn't snow in winter.

Does it snow in winter.

2 主系表结构

feel

smell

I am a teacher.

3 主语+及物动词+宾语

I have finished my homework.

I like music.

4 IODO

主语+谓语+间接宾语+直接宾语

Give me an apple.

## 5 主语+谓语+复合宾语

paint it pink

[词汇·略]

Greek 希腊人，希腊的

Greek gift 不怀好意的礼物

That's Greek to me. 我一点都不懂。

What's the climate like?

in your country

What's the climate like in your country?

What's the climate like in Beijing?

What's the weather like in spring?

nationality 国籍

nation 国家，民族

state 国家，政府

land 国家，国土

homeland 祖国

motherland

country 乡下

present 礼物，现在

parent 父母

peasant 农民

president 总统

pleasant

joy 欢乐

windy job 空欢喜

time 时间，次数

I have been there some times

sometime 某时

When will you come here?

Sometime next week.

Give me some time to think it over.

fall 秋天

legend 传奇

[Legends of the Fall 秋日传奇，燃情岁月]

come from

I come from China.

I don't come from China.

Do you come from China?  
Where do you come from?  
She comes from Greece.  
She doesn't come from Greece.  
Does she come from Greece?  
Where does she come from?  
Where do they come from?  
Where does your father come from?

[课文]

Where do you **come from**?  
I come from Greece.  
**What's the climate like** in your country?  
It's very pleasant.  
**What's the weather like in** spring? 四季前面用介词in  
It's often windy **in March**.  
    in May 在五月  
    It's windy in May.  
    often 经常  
It's always warm in April and May, **but it rains sometimes**.  
    But it rains sometimes. -> but sometimes it rains.  
**What's it like in summer?**  
It's always hot in June, July and August.  
The sun **shines** every day.  
    The sun is shining.  
    The sun shines every day.  
    The sun doesn't shine every day.  
    Does the sun shine every day?  
Is it cold or warm in autumn?  
    It is warm in autumn.  
    Is it warm in autumn?  
    Is it warm or cold in autumn?  
It's always warm in September and October.  
It's often cold in November and It rains sometimes.  
Is it very cold in winter?  
    It's cold in winter.  
It's often cold in December, January and February.  
It snows sometimes.

I think therefore I am.

我思故我在。

lesson 52 What nationality are they? Where do they come from?

[词汇]

the U.S. n. 美国 -> American: 美国人

Brazil n. 巴西 [brə'zil] -> Brazilian: 巴西人

Holland n. 荷兰 ['hɒlənd] -> Dutch: 荷兰人

England n. 英国 -> English: 英国人

France n. 法国 -> French: 法国人

Germany n. 德国 -> German: 德国人 (Greece: 希腊 -> Greek: 希腊人)

Italy n. 意大利 -> Italian: 意大利人

Norway n. 挪威 ['nɔ:wei] -> Norwegian: 挪威人

Russia n. 俄罗斯 -> Russian: 俄国人

Spain n. 西班牙 [speɪn] -> Spanish: 西班牙人

Sweden n. 瑞典 ['swi:dn] -> Swedish: 瑞典人

come(s) from:

I am Italian. I come from Italy.

They are Norwegian. They come from Norway.

My mother is Spanish. She comes from Spain.

The girl is French. She comes from France.

My wife is Brazilian. She comes from Brazil.

You are German. You come from Germany.

A Complete these sentence.

Example:

I come from England, but Stella comes from Spain.

1 We come from Germany, but Dimitri comes from Greece.

2 I like cold weather, but he likes warm weather.

3 He comes from the U.S., but she comes from England.

4 She doesn't like the winter, but she likes the summer.

5 I come from Norway, but you come from Spain.

6 Stella comes from Spain, but Hans and Karl come from Germany.

7 We don't come from Spain. We come from Brazil.

Lesson 53 An interesting climate

[词汇]

mild adj. 温和的, 温暖的 [maild]

always adv. 总是

north n. 北方

east n. 东方

wet adj. 潮湿的

west n. 西方  
south n. 南方  
season n. 季节  
best adv. 最  
night n. 夜晚  
rise v. 升起  
early adv. 早  
set v. （太阳）落下去  
late adv. 晚，迟  
interesting adj. 有趣的，有意思的  
subject n. 话题；[语法]主语；科目  
conversation n. 谈话

an interesting subject of the conversation  
in the west  
in the south  
England: 英国（the Great Britain and Northern Ireland）  
cold front: 冷锋  
warm front: 暖峰  
Scotch whisky: 苏格兰威士忌  
Scotland  
England  
Welsh  
Northern Ireland

mild -> wild: 野性的  
<Days of being wild>  
It's mild.  
What the climate like in England?  
It's very mild. But it's not always pleasant.  
mild: （人）性格温和的（与生俱来）  
gentleman: 绅士  
gentle: 温和的，文雅的（后天）

in the north: 在北方  
in the south  
wet: （程度最强） all in wet  
damp: （表面不干燥）  
humid: （专业）  
moist: （舒服的潮湿）  
It's very wet.

sea: 大海  
son: 儿子  
seasons ['si:znz]

good 好

better（比较级）

best（最高级）

I like spring best.

Do you like spring?

Which season(s) do you like best?

I like spring and summer best.

Because the days are long and the nights are short.

I don't like autumn and winter.

Because the days are short and the nights are long.

The sun rises early/late and sets late/early.

Which season do you like best?

I like spring and summer best.

Because the days are long and the nights are short.

The sun rises early and sets late.

I don't like autumn and winter.

Because the days are short and the nights are long.

The sun rises late and sets early.

at night

rises [raɪzɪz]

sets

an interesting

subject n. 话题；[语法]主语；科目

How many subjects do you have in your class?

say:（说话的内容）

speak:（讲话的动作）

talk:（谈话，聊天）

chat:（聊天）

dialog:（对话—有固定的话题）

conversation n. 谈话（随意的交流）

interesting subject of our conversation

Money and beauty are interesting subjects of conversation.

favorite: 特别喜欢的人（或物）

Climate is our favorite subject of conversation.

[提示]

in the West

It's wet in the West.

in the North

It's cold in the North.

in the East

It's windy in the East.  
in the South  
It's warm in the South.

What's the climate like in England?  
It's mild, but it's not always pleasant.  
Which season does Jim like best?  
Spring and summer.  
Because the days are long and the nights are short.  
The sun rises early and sets late.  
Why doesn't he like autumn and winter?  
Because the days are short and the night are long.  
The sun rises late and sets early.  
Is the climate in England very good?  
Climate in England is not very good.  
Is it very interesting?  
The climate in England is not very good.  
But it is very/certainly interesting.  
It's wet in the West.  
It's windy in the East.  
It's cold in the North.  
It's warm in the South.

Jim comes from England.  
Jim likes spring and summer.  
Because the days are long and the nights are short.  
The sun rises early and sets late.  
He doesn't like autumn and winter.  
Because the days are short and the nights are long.  
The sun rises late and sets early.  
The climate is the favorite subject of their conversation.

[课文]

Where do you **come from**?  
I come from England.  
**What's the climate like in your country?**  
It's **mild**, but it's not always **pleasant**.  
The weather's often cold **in the North** and windy **in the East**.  
It's often wet **in the West** and sometimes warm **in the south**.  
**Which seasons do you like best?**  
I like spring and summer.  
The days are long and the night are short.  
The sun rises early and sets late.  
I don't like autumn and winter.  
The days are short and the nights are long.  
The sun rises late and sets early.

Our climate is not very good, but it's **certainly interesting**. 的确  
It's our **favourite subject of conversation**.

[词汇·略]

Lesson 54 What nationality are they? Where do they come from?

[词汇]

Australia n. 澳大利亚

Australian n. 澳大利亚人

Austria n. 奥地利

Austrian n. 奥地利人

Canada n. 加拿大

Canadian n. 加拿大人

China n. 中国 Chinese

Finland n. 芬兰

Finnish n. 芬兰人

India n. 印度

Indian n. 印度人

Japan n. 日本 Japanese

Nigeria n. 尼日利亚 [nai'dʒiəriə]

Nigerian n. 尼日利亚人

Turkey n. 土耳其 ['tʊ:ki]

Turkish n. 土耳其人

Korea n. 韩国

Polish n. 波兰人

Poland n. 波兰

Thai n. 泰国人

Thailand n. 泰国

A Write questions and answers

Example:

The sun rises early.

Does the sun rise early?

The sun doesn't rise early.

1 The sun sets late.

Does the sun set late?

The sun doesn't set late.

2 He likes ice cream.

Does he like ice cream?

He doesn't like ice cream.

3 Mrs. Jones wants a biscuit.

Does Mrs. Jones want a biscuit?

Mrs. Jones doesn't want a biscuit.

4 Jim comes from England.

Does Jim come from England?

Jim doesn't come from England.

B Write questions and answers using these words.

Example:

he/Brazil

Where does he come from? Is he Brazilian?

Yes, he's Brazilian. He comes from Brazil.

1 he/Australia

Where does he come from? Is he Australian?

Yes, he's Australian. He comes from Australia.

3 she/Canada

Where does she come from? Is she Canadian?

Yes, she's Canadian. She comes from Canada.

4 this girl/Finland

Where does this girl come from? Is she Finland?

Yes, she's Finnish. She comes from Finland.

5 they/India

Where do they come from? Are they Indian?

Yes, they're Indian. They come from India.

7 Naoko/Japan

Where does Naoko come from? Is she Japanese?

Yes, she's Japanese. She comes from Japan.

8 my wife/Nigeria

Where does your wife come from? Is she Nigerian?

Yes, she's Nigerian. She comes from Nigeria.

10 he/Korea

Where does he come from? Is he Korean?

Yes, he's Korean. He comes from Korea.

she/Thailand

Where does she come from? Is she Thai?

Yes, she's Thai. She comes from Thailand.

[词汇·略]

If someone has deceived you, don't get angry with him, because everybody wants to make a living. And the way of life is so narrow that you cannot but run into others.

It's nearly the end of the last year, most of us have the habits to recollect what happened in the last year: something good, something bad, something sad, something happy ... But no matter what happened, I think, the best choice for everybody is try to be happy.

## Lesson 55 The Sawyer family

[词汇]

live v. 住，生活

stay v. 呆在，停留

home n. 家；adv. 到家

housework n. 家务

lunch n. 午饭

afternoon n. 下午

usually adv. 通常

together adv. 一起

evening n. 晚上

arrive v. 到达

night n. 夜间

live in(at)

stay at home

do the housework

do one's homework

have lunch, eat one's lunch

in the afternoon

at night

tell 告诉

mince 肉馅

chicken 鸡肉

butcher 屠夫

meat 肉

husband 丈夫

beefsteak 牛排

beef 牛肉

truth 实情，真话

together 一起

usually 通常

grape 葡萄

peach 桃子

tomato 西红柿

potato 土豆

lettuce 莴苣

cabbage 白菜

wardrobe 衣柜

checkroom 衣帽存放处

nationality 国籍

refrigerator 冰箱

electric 电的

home 家

house 房子

living room 客厅

bedroom 卧室

kitchen 厨房

garden 花园

town 城镇

village 村庄

country 乡下；国家

in the afternoon 在下午

housework 家务

homework 家庭作业

at night 在夜间

arrive 到达

evening 傍晚，晚间

night 夜间

too 肯定句中表示“也”

either 否定句和疑问句中表示“也”

do one's homework: 做 … 的家庭作业

do the housework: 做家务

in the evening

at night

[词汇·略]

live: 长期居住在 …; 短期住

dwelt: 合法居住

inhabit: 世代居住在

reside: (正式用语) 居住在 … [ri'zaid]

live in/live at

My uncle lives in Paris.

The Sawyers live at 87 King Street.

Where do they live? /Where does she(he) live?

Where do the student live?

live(a.)

live show: 现场演出

make a living: 谋生

live for: 为 … 而活着

stay at home: 呆在家

homeless: 无家可归

homesick: 思乡的

hometown: 家乡

homely: 家常的

homeland: 祖国

homemade: 自制的

home alone: 独自在家

here, there, home, upstairs, downstairs, downtown, abroad

这些地点副词前面不能加介词

do one's housework [一般不用]

do the housework

breakfast: 早餐

supper: 晚餐

dinner: 正餐, 宴会

meal: 一顿饭

three meals a day

in the evening

arrive in/ at

at night

live in/at: 居住  
go to work: 去上班  
go to school: 去上学  
take sb. to somewhere: 带某人去……  
stay at home 呆在家里  
do the housework 做家务  
eat/have one's lunch: 吃……的午餐  
see one's friends: 拜访……的朋友  
drink tea together: 一起喝茶  
come home from school: 从学校回家  
come home from work: 下班回家  
arrive home 到家  
do one's homework: 做……的家庭作业  
go to bed: 上床睡觉  
read one's newspaper: 读报纸  
watch TV: 看电视

[提示]

when, where, when, who

Where do the Sawyers live?

They live at eight-seven King Street.

What does Mr. Sawyer usually do in the morning?

Mr. Sawyer goes to work in the morning.

What do the children do in the morning?

They go to school.

Who takes them every day?

Their father. Mr. Sawyer.

Mr. Sawyer takes them to school every day.

What does Mrs. Sawyer do in the morning?

Mrs. Sawyer usually stays at home.

What does she do?

She does the homework.

When does Mrs. Sawyer eat her lunch?

At noon.

What does Mrs. Sawyer do at noon?

Eats her lunch.

When does Mrs. Sawyer see her friends?

In the afternoon.

Usually what do they do together?

They usually drink tea together.

When does Mr. Sawyer come home from work?

In the evening.

Does he arrive home very early?

No, he doesn't come home very early.

Do they come home from school very early?

Yes, the children arrive home very early.

What do the children do at night?

They usually do their homework.

Then what do they do?

They go to bed.

What about Mr. Sawyer?

Mr. Sawyer usually reads his newspaper.

Sometimes he and his wife watch television.

[课文]

**The Sawyer live at 87 King Street.**

**In the morning**, Mr. Sawyer **goes to work** and the children **go to school**.

Their father **takes them to school** every day.

Mrs. Sawyer **stays at home** every day. She **does the housework**.

She always **eats her lunch at noon**.

**In the afternoon**, she usually **sees her friends**. They often **drink tea together**/in the garden.

**In the evening**, the children **come home from school**. They **arrive home** early.

Mr. Sawyer **comes home from work**. He **arrives home** late.

**At night**, the children always **do their homework**. **Then they go to bed**. Mr. Sawyer usually **reads his newspaper**, but sometimes he and his wife **watch television**.

live at, go to work, go to school, take to, stay at home, do the housework, eat one's lunch, see one's friends, drink tea together, come home from school, arrive home, come home from work, do one's homework, go to bed, read one's newspaper, watch TV

重点：一般现在时及动词的熟练使用。

[单词 • 略]

Lesson 56 What do they usually do?

A Complete these sentences -s or -es

1 The children go to school in the morning.

2 Their father takes them to school.

3 Mrs. Sawyer stays at home.

4 She does the housework.

5 She always eats her lunch at noon.

B Write questions and answers.

Example:

she/morning often/dust/the cupboard

What does she do in the morning?

She often dusts the cupboard in the morning.

1 she/morning always/make/the bed

What does she do in the morning?

She always makes the bed in the morning.

2 he/morning always/shave

What does he do in the morning?

He always shaves in the morning.

3 they/evening sometimes/listen to/the stereo

What do they do in the evening?

They sometimes listen to the stereo in the evening.

4 he/every day always/clean/the blackboard

What does he do every day?

He always cleans the blackboard every day.

5 they/night always/go/to bed early

What do they do at night?

They always go to bed early at night.

6 she/every day usually/wash/the dishes

What does she do every day?

She usually washes the dishes every day.

7 they/afternoon usually/type/some letters

What do they do in the afternoon?

They usually type some letters in the afternoon.

8 it/every day usually/drink/some milk

What does it do every day?

It usually drinks some milk every day.

9 they/evening sometimes/watch/television

What do they do in the evening?

They sometimes watch television in the evening.

10 she/noon always/eat/her lunch

What does she do at noon?

She always eats her lunch at noon.

11 he/evening often/read/his newspaper

What does he do in the evening?

He often reads his newspaper in the evening.

[复习]Lesson 55 The Sawyer family

live in/at

go to work

go to school

take to

stay at home

do the housework

eat/have one's lunch

see one's friends

drink tea together

come home from school

arrive home

come home from work

do one's homework

go to bed

read one's newspaper

watch TV

The Sawyers （一家人）

The Sawyers live at 87 King Street.

Mr. Sawyer goes to work every day.

Mr. Sawyer is going to work now.

The children go to school every day.

by 表示某种方式

by car/bus/train

They go to school by car every day.

They are going to school by bus today.

on foot

The children are going to school on foot.

take to

Mr. Sawyer takes children to school every day.

shop: 商店

But he is taking Mrs. Sawyer to the shop today.

stay at home

go to the shops

Mrs. Sawyer stays at home every day. But she is going to the shops today.

do the housework

Mrs. Sawyer does the housework every day. But she is watching TV today

eat one's lunch

Mrs. Sawyer eats her lunch every day. But she is sleeping today.

see one's friends

Mrs. Sawyer sees her friends every day.

They drink tea together in the living room every day. But they are drinking coffee in the garden today.

come home from school

at + 时间

The children come home from school at 5 every day.

They do their homework every day. But they are playing in the garden.

Mr. Sawyer comes home from work late every day.

[at night]

Mr. Sawyer reads his newspaper every day. But he is reading an interesting book today.

Lesson 57 An unusual day

[课文]

It is eight o'clock. The children **go to school by car** every day, but today, they are going to school **on foot**. (They are walking to school today.)

It is ten o'clock. Mrs. Sawyer usually stays at home in the morning, but this morning, she is **going to the shops**.

It is four o'clock. In the afternoon, Mrs. Sawyer usually drinks tea in the living room. But this after, she is drinking tea in the garden.

It is six o'clock. In the evening, the children usually **do their homework**, but this evening, they are not doing their homework. **At the moment**, they are playing in the garden.

It is nine o'clock. Mr. Sawyer usually reads his newspaper **at night**. But he's not reading his newspaper tonight. At the moment, he's reading **an interesting book**.

How do the children go to school every day?

Who takes them to school every day?

How are they going to school today?

What does Mrs. Sawyer do every day?

What is she doing today?

Where do Mrs. Sawyer and her friends drink tea every day?

Where are they drinking tea today?

What do the children usually do after they come back from school?

What are they doing today?

What does Mrs. Sawyer usually do every day at night?

What's he doing tonight?

### Lesson 57 An unusual day

[词汇]

o'clock adv. 点钟

shop n. 商店

moment n. 片刻，瞬间

What's the time?/ What time is it?

It's ... o'clock. (表示整点)

past (表示半点前)

Ten past seven.

Twenty past nine.

half (表示半点)

It's half past eight.

It's half past ten.

to (表示半点以后)

Ten to seven.

Twenty to four.

Two to two.

quarter (表示一刻钟)

a quarter

A quarter past one.

It's a quarter to four.

It's a quarter past nine.

It's a quarter to seven.

What's the time?/What time is it?

It's ten (minutes) past seven.

It's seven o'clock.

It's half past seven.

It's twenty to eight.

A quarter past nine.

shopping center: 购物中心

shopping mall: 大型购物中心 [məʊl]

supermarket: 超市

go to the shops

go shopping

do some shopping

shoplift: 从商店中偷商品

shoplifter: 商店扒手

window shop [只看不买]

**at the moment:** 现在，此刻

for a moment: 一会儿

at any moment: 任何时候

at the last moment: 在最后一刻

**in a moment:** 不久

at the very moment: 就在非常的那一时刻

**at that moment:** 就在那一时刻

[课文·略]

Lesson 58 What's the time?

## Lesson 58 What's the time? 几点钟

He usually shave at 7:00 o'clock, but today, he is shaving at 8:00.

1 She usually drinks tea in the morning, but this morning, she is drinking coffee.

2 They usually play in the garden in the afternoon, but this afternoon, they are playing in the park.

3 He usually washes the dishes at night, but tonight he is washing clothes.

they/every day go/to school by car

What do they usually do every day.

They usually go to school by car every day.

Today go/to school on foot

What are they doing today?

They are going to school on foot today.

she/morning drink/tea

morning drink/coffee

What does she usually do in the morning?

She usually drinks tea in the morning.

What is she doing this morning?

She is drinking coffee this morning.

they/afternoon play/in the garden

afternoon swim/in the river

What do they usually do in the afternoon?

They usually play in the garden in the afternoon.

What are they doing this afternoon?

They are swimming in the river this afternoon.

I/evening cook/a meal

evening read/a book

What do you usually do in the evening?

I usually cook a meal in the evening.

What are you doing this evening?

I am reading a book this evening.

we/night watch/television

tonight listen to/the stereo

What do you usually do at night?

We usually watch television at night.

What are you doing tonight?

We are listening to the stereo tonight.

## Lesson 59 Is that all? 就这些吗?

[词汇]

envelope n.信封 ['enviləʊp]

writing paper 信纸  
shop assistant 售货员  
size n. 尺寸，尺码，大小  
pad n. 信笺簿（可数）  
glue n. 胶水（不可数）  
chalk n. 粉笔（不可数）  
change n. 零钱，找给的钱

paper（论文）/ newspaper 中的 paper 是可数的  
writing paper 是不可数的

large size/small size/special size 特大号/medium size/pocket size 袖珍型/portable size 便携式的

I want the large size.

I don't want the large size.

Do you want the large size?

Do you want the large size or the small size?

Does she want the large size or the small size?

Do they want the large size or the small size?

Do the students want the large size or the small size?

Does Mr. Silvia（Silvia 为女名，似乎应该是 Sawyer） want the large size or the small size?

Is she a student or a teacher?

Are they keyboard operators or engineers?

Are you reading newspapers or reading books?

Is she sleeping or swimming?

Are they jumping or running?

Do you want the large size or the small size?

I want the large size.

平时要多读

除了课堂学习外，课下还要多做练习

《新概念词汇练习手册》……？

a piece of chalk/two pieces of chalk

change n. 零钱

改变 great changes

change into/turn into

The wizard changed the frog into a beautiful princess.

I have been working hard for so many years to turn my dream into reality.

change one's mind

a bottle of glue

a box of chalk/ a large box of chalk /small boxes

[课文]

I want some envelopes, please.

Do you want the large size or the small size?

The large size, please.

Do you have any writing paper?

Yes, we do.

I don't have any small pads. I only have large one. Do you want a pad?

Yes, please.

And I want some glue.

A bottle of glue.

And I want a large box of chalk, too.

I only have small boxes.

Do you want one?

No, thank you.

Is that all?

That's all, thank you.

What else do you want?

I want my change.

where/when/what/which/how many/how much

Who is the lady speaking to?

A shop assistant.

What does the lady want?

Envelops/writing paper/glue/chalk

What kind of envelopes does she want, large size or small size?

Large size.

Do the shop assistant have large pads?

How much glue does the lady want?

A bottle of.

Can the shop assistant give the lady a large box of chalk?

No, he can't.

There aren't any large box of chalk.

What else does the lady want?

Where else/Who else

She wants the change.

I'm going to H.K. next week. Where else are you going to go?

I was talking to that lady just now. Who else do you want to talk?

Are there any small pads in the shop?

They have only some large pads.

Are there any small boxes of chalk in the shop?

Does the lady want the small box of chalk?

A lady is in the shop. She wants some envelopes.

She wants the large size envelopes.

She wants some writing paper.

But there are not any small pads in the shop.

have/only

They only have large pads. They don't have small pads.

They have small boxes of chalk. They don't have large boxes of chalk.

has/doesn't have

She has some envelopes. She doesn't have any envelopes. Does she have any envelopes? Do you have any envelopes?

That is all.

Is that all?

I want my change.

have/has 实义动词

有/代替一些普通动词

eat one's lunch/have one's lunch

take/have some medicine

have a swim/have a chat(talk/walk)

I'm going to have a swim.

have a rest

eat one's lunch/have one's lunch

I have a pen./I don't have a pen.

I eat/have my lunch every day.

当 have 表示“有”这个概念的时候，其否定形式和疑问形式各有两种。

这种情况，可以在 have/has 后直接加not,也可以象普通动词那样，借助一般现在时助动词 do/does 来表示否定和疑问。

I have a sister.

I haven't a sister. I don't have a sister.

Have you a sister? Do you have a sister?

He has a sister.

He hasn't a sister. He doesn't have a sister.

Has he a sister? Does he have a sister?

hasn't.

1 当have表示“有”这个概念的时候，可以在have/has后直接加not.

2 当have表示行为动作的时候，不可以在have/has后直接加not,而要借助一般现在时助动词do/does来表示否定和疑问。

I have my lunch at twelve every day.

I don't have my lunch at twelve every day.

Do you have your lunch at twelve every day?

3 have可以作为助动词，其一，用于现在完成时。其二，没有实际意义。

have/has/haven't/hasn't.

I have been to H.K..

She has been to U.S.A..

[词汇·略]

Lesson 60 What's the time? 几点钟

cheese	biscuits	lettuces	chicken
butter	potatoes	bananas	whisky
eggs	tomatoes	grapes	beer
jam	peas	peaches	wine

honey	beans	steak	tobacco
bread	cabbages	mince	soap

Do you have any honey?  
Does she have any biscuits?  
Do they have any chicken?  
Do you have any whisky?  
Does he have any tobacco?

#### Exercise A

I don't have any bananas, but I have some peaches.  
I don't have any grapes, but I have some peaches.  
I don't have any tomatoes, but I have some potatoes.  
I don't have any mince, but I have some steak.  
I don't have any glue, but I have some ink.  
I don't have any envelopes, but I have some writing paper.

Do you have any butter?  
I don't have any butter, but I have some cheese.  
1 Do you have any honey?  
I don't have any honey, but I have some jam?  
2 Do you and Penny have any beans?  
We don't have any beans, but we have some potatoes.  
3 Do Penny and Sam have any wine?  
They don't have any wine, but they have some beer.  
4 Do you and Sam have any bread?  
We don't have any bread, but we have some biscuits.

She has some grapes.  
Does she have any grapes?  
She doesn't have any grapes, but she has some bananas.  
Does he have any lettuces?/cabbages  
he doesn't have any lettuces, but he has some cabbages.  
Do you have any mince?/steak  
I don't have any mince, but I have some steak.

5 Do Sam and Penny have any grapes?  
They don't have any grapes, but they have some bananas.  
6 Do you have any mince?  
I don't have any mince, but I have some steak.  
7 Do the children have any butter?  
They don't have any butter, but they have some eggs.

特别说明：本文根据新东方第一册网络教程（FLASH）制作，由眼角的泪光整理发布，不得用于商业目的

8 Do you have any lettuces?

I don't have any lettuces, but I have some cabbages.

9 Do you and Penny have any beaus?

No, we don't have any beaus, but we have some peas.

## Lesson 61 A bad cold 重感冒

Health is a kind of freedom and comes first of all.

[词汇]

feel v. 感觉

look v. 看（起来）

must modal verb 必须

call v. 叫，请

doctor n. 医生

telephone n. 电话

remember v. 记得，记住

mouth n. 嘴 open your mouth

tongue n. 舌头 show me your tongue

bad adj. 坏的，严重的 bad cold

cold n. 感冒

news n. 消息 [nju:z] [nu:z] good news

They are looking at the blackboard.

feel/smell/look/taste

1 主语+不及物动词

2 主系表结构，其中系动词（link-verb）包括be动词和感官动词。

be动词后可跟形容词和名词；感官动词后多加形容词做表语。

I feel happy.

The food smells terrible.

She looks sad.

This tastes good.

I feel ill.

She feels ill.

Do you feel ill?

How do you feel?

How does she feel?

How does Jimmy feel?

Jimmy looks ill. Jimmy is in bed. He feels ill. He doesn't feel ill. Does he feel ill? How does he feel? He looks ill.

feel funny/ feel like (doing) sth./feel free to do sth.

look at the blackboard

look 表示看的动作/ see 表示看的内容、结果/ watch 观看移动的东西/ observe 表示观察/ spot /sight/view 察看

lose oneself at the first sight

I lost myself at the first sight of my wife.

sightsee/ scan/ glimpse 瞥一眼/ glance 匆匆看一眼/ stare/ notice/ note 看到并记住

look for 寻找/ look after 照顾/ look forward to 希望/ look down on(upon)

call(s) a doctor

doctor/ Dr./quack 江湖郎中/ healer 大夫/dentist 牙医/physician 内科医生/ surgeon 外科医生

see a doctor/ see the dentist

send for a doctor/ ask the doctor

Jimmy feels ill today. He looks ill. You must see/call a doctor.

Mrs. Williams must call a doctor.

at the butcher's/at the doctor's

middle school

Jimmy is a middle school student. He is in bed now. He feels ill. He looks ill. Mrs. Williams is his mother. They must call the doctor. Now Jimmy is at the doctor's.

retell/ recite/ repeat

remember/ recall/ recollect/ remind 使想起/ review 复习

When I recall sth. happened last year, ...

I like stamps collecting.

I can't recollect what happened in past year.

remember + 名词或代词

I remember you.

the doctor's telephone number

I can remember the doctor's telephone number.

Can you remember the doctor's telephone number?

remember to do sth. 记得去做某事

remember doing sth. 记得做了某事

post

When you go by the post office, remember to post the letter.

I remember posting the letter.

remember sth.

mouth [mauθ]

month [mʌnθ] n. 月

mouse [maus] n. 鼠, 耗子

tongue twister ['twistə] n. 绕口令/ mother tongue

open your mouth/ show me your tongue /show your tongue to me

bad/ ill/ evil

cold adj. 寒冷的 It is cold.

n. 感冒 have/ catch/ get a bad cold.

其否定形式是用 don't 和 doesn't, 用do 和 does 构成疑问句

I have a cold today. I don't have a cold today. Do you have a cold today? Jimmy has a cold today. Jimmy doesn't have a cold today. Does Jimmy have a cold today?

a piece of news

That is good news for me!

That is good news for Jimmy!

No news is the good news.

[课文]

Where's Jimmy?

He's **in bed**.

**What's the matter** with him?

He **feels** ill.

He **looks** ill.

We must **call the doctor**.

Yes, we must.

Can you remember **the doctor's telephone number**?

Yes. It's **09754**.

**Open your mouth**, Jimmy.

**Show me your tongue**.

Say, "Ah".

**What's the matter with him**, doctor?

He **has a bad cold**, Mr. Williams, so he must **stay in bed for a week**.

That's **good news** for Jimmy.

Good news?

Why?

**Because** he doesn't like school!

What's the matter with Jimmy today?

He feels ill.

Does he look ill?

Who can remember the doctor's telephone number?

Mrs. Williams.

What is the doctor's telephone number?

09754.

Does Jimmy like school? Is that good news for Jimmy?

[He has a bad cold.]

He doesn't have a bad cold.

Does he have a bad cold.

Lesson 62 What's the matter with them? What must they do?

headache -> have a headache

aspirin

earache -> have an earache

toothache -> have a toothache

dentist

stomach ache -> have a stomach ache

medicine

temperature -> have a temperature

flu -> have flu

measles -> have measles ['mi:zls] n. [医]麻疹, 风疹, 包虫病, 痧子

mumps -> have mumps [mʌmps] 腮腺炎

take/have an aspirin ['æspərin] n. 阿斯匹林(解热镇痛药), 乙酰水杨酸

see a doctor

see a dentist

take some medicine

go to bed

stay in bed

call the doctor

#### Exercise

I have a headache. He has a headache.

I must stay at home. He must stay at home.

I have a cold. He has a cold.

I can't go to work. He can't go to work.

I am not well. He is not well.

I feel ill. He feels ill.

I must see a doctor. He must see a doctor.

I do not like doctors. He does not like doctors.

#### 造句

Sam has a temperature, so he must go to bed.

Jane has a stomachache, so she must take some medicine.

She has a headache, so she must take an aspirin.

Susan has mumps, so we must call the doctor.

He has a toothache, so he must see a dentist.

Jimmy has measles, so we must call the doctor.

Dave has flu. He must stay in bed.

Jimmy/ a stomachache/ a headache/ take an aspirin

What's the matter with Jimmy?

Does he have a stomach ache?

No, he doesn't have a stomachache.

He has a headache.

So he must take an aspirin.

Elizabeth/ an earache/ a headache/ take an aspirin

What's matter with Elizabeth?

Does she have an earache?

No, she doesn't have an earache.

She has a headache.

So she must take an aspirin.

George/ a headache/ an earache/ see a doctor

What's the matter with George?

Does he have a headache?

No, he doesn't have a headache.

He has an earache.

So she [疑为笔误，应为he] must see a doctor.

Jim/ a stomachache/ a toothache/ see a dentist

What's the matter with Jim?

Does he have a stomachache?

No, he doesn't have a stomachache.

He has a toothache.

So he must see a dentist.

Jane/ a toothache/ a stomachache/ take some medicine

What's the matter with Jane?

Does she have a toothache?

No, she doesn't have a toothache.

She has a stomachache.

So she must take some medicine.

Sam/ a stomachache/ a temperature/ go to bed

What's the matter with Sam?

Does he have a stomachache?

No, he doesn't have a stomachache.

He has a temperature.

So he must go to bed.

Dave/ a headache/ flu/ stay in bed

What's the matter with Dave?

Does he have a headache?

No, he doesn't have a headache.

He has flu.

So he must stay in bed.

Jimmy/ a headache/measles/we ... call the doctor

What's the matter with the Jimmy?

Does he have a headache?

No, he doesn't have a headache.

He has measles.

So we must call the doctor.

Susan/ an earache/mumps/we ... call the doctor

What's the matter with Susan?

Does she have an earache?

No, she doesn't have an earache.

She has mumps.

So we must call the doctor.

No road is long with good company.

company 公司，朋友，陪伴

有良友相伴，路途虽远并不遥远。

With friends at one's side, the life displays all its value.

有了朋友，生命才完整。

### Lesson 63 Thank you, doctor

[词汇]

better adj. 形容词well的比较级

certainly adv. 当然

get up 起床

yet adv. 还，仍

rich adj. 油腻的，富有的

food n. 食物

remain v. 保持，继续

《新概念英语?? 词典》

with, so, for

with 第一种用法跟在be动词之后，第二种用在固定的动词之后

keep up with

catch up with

What's the matter with ... ?

Mr. Jones with his family.

so 程度副词

如此，用于形容词或副词的前面

She is so beautiful.

Don't drive so quickly.

转折连词，因此。

because 因为

用了因为不能用所以，用了所以不能用因为

用了尽管就不能用但是，用了但是就不能用尽管

for 1 用在be动词之后。是为了... 的意思

This bookcase is for Susan.

2 跟在动词之后

look for

3 for 的后面跟一段时间

[词汇·略]

good/well -> better

had better do sth.

had better not do sth.

smoke 抽烟

You had better not smoke here.

You had better not telephone here.

You had better not answer the telephone.

[certainly]

of course

sure [主观上的有把握]

It's certainly interesting.

certain 确定的[客观上的确定]

confident 自信的，有把握的

It is certain that young man will be successful in the future.

I'm sure my boy friend will be a great man in the future.

yet 更多用于否定句

the rich 富人

the poor 穷人

rich food 油腻的食物

stay in bed

remain in bed [更加正式]

don't

Don't eat rich food.

You mustn't eat rich food.

Don't open the window.

You mustn't open the window.

Who else is in bed today? Mr. Williams.

What's the matter with him? He has a bad cold too.

Is Jimmy better now?

Can he get up now?

How long can he get up? Two hours each day.

Can he go to school today?

What mustn't he eat? Rich food.

What must Mrs. Williams do? Keep the room warm.

[课文]

How's Jimmy today?

Better. Thank you, doctor.

Can I see him please, Mrs. Williams?

Certainly, doctor. Come upstairs.

You look very well, Jimmy.

You are better now, but you mustn't get up yet.

You must stay in bed for another two days.

The boy mustn't go to school yet, Mrs. Williams.

And he mustn't eat rich food.

Does he have a temperature, doctor?

No, he doesn't.

Must he stay in bed?

Yes, he must remain in bed for another two days.

He can get up for about two hours each day, but you must keep the room warm.

Where's Mr. Williams this evening?

He's in bed, doctor.

Can you see him please?

He has a bad cold, too!

Where is Jimmy's bedroom? Upstairs.

Where is Mr. Williams now? He is in bed.

Does Jimmy have a temperature?

What must Jimmy do today? Jimmy must stay in bed and mustn't eat rich food.

Can Jimmy get up? How long? Two hours each day.

How is Jimmy?

come upstairs 上楼

You look very well Jimmy.

You are better now.

yet 用于否定句中

another two days 另外两天

The boy mustn't go to school.

mustn't eat rich food

have a temperature 发烧

remain in bed

each day

every 指三个或三个以上的每一个，强调大家一起

each 指两个或两个以上中的每一个，强调逐个，单个

The final examination is coming, each of you has to talk to me.

each side of the street 街道的两边

He can get up for about two hours each day, but you must keep the room warm.

paint it pink

Lesson 64 Don't ... You mustn't ...

[词汇]

play v. 玩

match n. 火柴

talk v. 谈话

library n. 图书馆

drive v. 开车

so adv. 如此地

quickly adv. 快地

lean out of 身体探出

break v. 打破

noise n. 喧闹声

Written exercises 书面练习 B page 128

aspirin 阿斯匹林

play with matches 玩火柴

make a noise 发出噪音

lean out of the window 把身体探出窗外

take any aspirins

take this medicine

call the doctor

play with matches

talk in the library

make a noise

drive so quickly

lean out of the window

break that vase

Written exercises 书面练习 A page 128

I mustn't take any aspirins.

Jimmy mustn't take any aspirins.

1 Jimmy is better now but Jimmy mustn't get up yet.

2 Jimmy has a cold and Jimmy must stay in bed.

3 Jimmy can get up for two hours each day.

4 Jimmy often reads in bed.

5 Jimmy listens to the stereo, too.

6 Jimmy doesn't feel ill now.

Lesson 65 Not a baby

[词汇]

Dad n. 爸（儿语）

key n. 钥匙 adj.关键的

baby n. 婴儿

hear v. 听见

enjoy v. 玩得快活

yourself pron.你自己

ourselves pron.我们自己

mum n. 妈妈

hear 听见 [iə] <-> hair 头发 [εə]

myself pron. 我自己

themselves pron. 他们自己

himself pron. 他自己

herself pron. 她自己

keyboard 键盘

key words 关键的话语

key point 关键点

the key to the door

the key to the front door

want 想要

want to do sth.

go abroad 出国

next year 明年

I want to go abroad next year.

help

She wants to help you.

I am going to see my friends.

I can't arrive home at ten o'clock.

I want to have the key to the front door.

Jill wants to have the key to the front door.

Can I have the key to the front door?

the key to the front door

listen 听

listening 听力

listen to

hear from sb. 收到某人的来信

I hear from my mother every week.

hear of 听说

Can you hear?

Do you hear? 你听见了吗?

speak 讲话

Do you speak English?

enjoy sth.

enjoy oneself

enjoy doing sth.

music 音乐

I like music.

I enjoy music.

I like you.

I enjoy you.[一般不合用]

always 总是

I always enjoy myself.

They always enjoy themselves.

Jill always enjoys herself.

I enjoy reading.

要加-ing的动词

mind, finish

mind doing sth.

finish doing sth.

[词汇·略]

come home [在家，谈及回家]

get home 到家[不论在家与否]

be home 在家

go home 回家[在外]

arrive home 到家[比较正式]

I come home at six o'clock every day.

I get home very early every day.

I can't get home so early.

The children come home from school at five o'clock.

Mr. Smith come home from work at six o'clock.

I can't get home so early.

You must be home.

let's

Let's go home.

I arrive home at seven o'clock.

But my brother arrives home at six o'clock.

after a quarter past eleven

You must be home at half past ten.

I can get home at half past ten.

Jill is eighteen years old.

meet some friends

Jill is going to meet some friends.

She usually comes home early.

But she can't get home so early today.

So she wants to have the key to the front door.

Can I have the key to the front door?

No, you can't.

Jill is eighteen years old, she is not a baby.

give her the key

give the key to her

a quarter past eleven

after a quarter past eleven

You mustn't come home after a quarter past eleven.

Jill always enjoys herself.

[课文]

What are you going to do **this evening**, Jill?

I'm going to **meet some friends**. Dad.

You mustn't **come home** late.

You must **be home** at half past ten.

I can't **get home** so early, Dad!

Can I **have the key to the front door** please?

No, you can't.

Jill's **eighteen years old**, Tom.

She's not a baby.

Give her the key.

She always comes home early.

Oh, all right!

Here you are.

But you mustn't come home after a quarter past eleven.

Do you hear?

Yes. Dad.

Thanks, Mum.

That's all right.

Goodbye.

Enjoy yourself!

We always **enjoy ourselves**, Mum.

Bye-bye.

every year

next week

last year

last week

this year

last Friday

eighteen-year girl

give the key to her

welcome 欢迎

You are welcome. 不用谢

That's ok.

Enjoy yourself!

I always enjoy myself.

We are enjoying ourselves.

They are enjoying themselves.

He's enjoying himself.

She's enjoying herself.

have a good time

Written exercises 书面练习 A page 132

1 at

2 in

3 from, from

4 in

5 in

6 in, in

a quarter past one

a quarter to four

two o'clock

half past one

a quarter past three

half past two

half past three

three o'clock

a quarter past two

a quarter to two

a quarter to three

1 She must go to the library at a quarter past one.

2 We must see the dentist at a quarter to four.

3 I must type this letter at two o'clock.

4 They must see the boss at half past one.

5 George must take his medicine at a quarter past three.

9 They must come home at a quarter past two.

## Lesson 67 The weekend

[词汇]

greengrocer n. 蔬菜水果零售商

absent adj. 缺席的

Monday n. 星期一

Tuesday n. 星期二

Wednesday n. 星期三

Thursday n. 星期四

keep v. (身体健康) 处于(状况)

spend v. 度过

weekend n. 周末

Friday n. 星期五

Saturday n. 星期六

Sunday n. 星期日

country n. 乡村

lucky adj. 幸运的

butcher 卖肉的

at the butcher's 在肉店里

at the greengrocer's

dentist 牙医

at the dentist's 在牙医的诊所

hairdresser

at the hairdresser's

my mother

at my mother's home

at my mother's

I am going to stay at my mother's this Friday.

this weekend 这个周末

They are going to stay at her mother's this weekend.

be absent

be absent from school 缺课

be absent from work 旷工

study

school

student

[k] [d] [g] [b]

与S搭配发音要“浊化”

in the country

luck

good luck

## 一般过去时

### 1 现在进行时

一表示现阶段正在进行或发生的事情

二表示一个阶段正在进行，但说话时不一定正在进行

三表示将来要做的事情

be + v+ing

be + not + v+ing

now

### 2 一般现在时

表示现在的事实或状态

表示经常的习惯或反复的动作

代替一般将来时

结构：主语+be动词

主语+实义动词原形

主语是第三人称单数时 +v+s(es)

don't; do

doesn't; does

一般现在时的时间

频率副词：often, always, sometimes, never, usually

用在be动词之后，行为动词之前

否定句中用在助动词和行为动词之间

## 一般过去时

一表示过去某个点上特定的时间存在的状态，事实，或发生的动作。

二表示在过去的一段时间内经常发生的动作或反复的习惯。

was, were

wasn't, weren't

two years ago 两年以前

three days ago 三天以前

five years ago 五年以前

two minutes ago

four weeks ago

last year

last month

last Sunday

I was a student two years ago.

I wasn't a student two years ago.

Were you a student two years ago?

yesterday

I was at the butcher's yesterday.

Mrs. Williams

Mrs. Williams was at the greengrocer's three days ago.

just now 刚才

Were you at the butcher's just now?

Were you at the greengrocer's just now?

absent

be absent from school

be absent from work

Jimmy was absent from school last week.

They were absent from work last week.

He was absent from school on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, and Thursday.

v 动作的过去时态

go -> went

I went there yesterday.

did, didn't

I didn't go there yesterday.

Did you go there yesterday? Yes, I did. No, I didn't.

What do you do every day?

What do they do every day?

What does she do every day?

What did you do yesterday?

动作的过去式变化

规则变化

ask, jump, wait

1 一般的动词后面直接加-ed

清辅音后面加ed, 读[t]

浊辅音或元音后面加ed, 读[d]

asked [ɑ:skt]

jumped [dʒʌmpɪt]

cleaned [kli:nd]

lied [laɪd]

waited [ˈweɪtɪd]

2 单词末尾是e的直接加d

believe, argue, waste

believed, argued, wasted

3 单词是以短元音加一个辅音结尾，这个辅音要双写加ed

ɒ, e, a, i

chat, stop, beg, fit

chatted

stopped

begged

fitted

4 如果是辅音字母加y结尾的单词，要把y变i加ed

study, empty, cry

studied

emptied

cried

play -> played

enjoy -> enjoyed

empty -> empties -> emptied -> emptying

I empty the basket every morning.

My mother empties the basket every morning.

My father emptied the basket yesterday morning.

They are emptying the basket.

I am going to empty the basket.

I didn't empty the basket yesterday.

Did you empty the basket yesterday?

What did you do yesterday?

What did she do yesterday?

What did your mother do yesterday?

[词汇·略]

keep -> kept

How are you all keeping?

keep up with sb. 赶上某人

keep on doing sth. 继续保持做某事

keep sb./sth. under one's hat = keep secret 保守秘密

study

study hard

want to do sth.

I am studying hard.

I want to keep up with you.

try 尝试

keep on trying

cost [物做主语，表示物的售价]

pay [人做主语，人为某物付钱]

afford 支付得起，腾出时间

take [花时间]

expend [数额较大，比较正式的用法]

It cost me ...

pay for

I can't afford it.

I can afford one day for you.

spend

spend three days

holiday 假期

Spend my holiday

in the country

I am going to spend three days in the country.

spend the weekend

They are going to spend their weekend in Hong Kong.

spend ... on

spend (in) doing sth.

I spend some time reading the book.

Women always spend a lot of money on clothes.

I have spent a lot of money on my child.

I spent ten minutes in listening to Mr.Zhang's explanation.

spend some time on sth.

spend some time in doing sth.

luck

lucky

unlucky 不幸运的

good luck

at the greengrocer's

be absent from school

How are you all keeping?

spend some time

in the country

We are very lucky.

Mrs. Johnson was at the butcher's yesterday.

Mrs. William was at the greengrocer's.

They were at the school yesterday.

Jimmy was absent from school yesterday.

They were absent from work on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday and Thursday.

How are you all keeping?

We are going to spend three days in the country.

You are very lucky.

You aren't very lucky.

Aren't you lucky?

[课文]

Hello.

Where you at the butcher's?

Yes. I was.

Were you at butcher's, too?

No, I wasn't.

I was at the greengrocer's.

How's Jimmy today?

He's very well, thank you.

Was he absent from school last week?

Yes, he was.

He was absent on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday and Tuesday.

How are you all keeping?

Very well, thank you.

We're going to spend three days in the country.

We're going to stay at my mother's for the weekend.

Friday, Saturday and Sunday in the country!

Aren't you lucky!

## Lesson 68 What's the time?

### [词汇]

church n. 教堂

dairy n. 乳品店

baker n. 面包师傅

grocer n. 食品杂货商

### Written exercises 书面练习A

1 \ at church

2 the

3 \ at school

4 the

5 the

6 the

7 \

My son goes to school every morning.

### Written exercises 书面练习B

1 Tom/the hairdresser's/Thursday

When was Tom at the hairdresser's?

He was at the hairdresser's on Thursday.

2 Mrs. Jones/the butcher's/Wednesday

When was Mrs. Jones at the butcher's?

She was at the butcher's on Wednesday.

3 he/home/Sunday

When was he at home?

He was at home in Sunday.

4 Penny/the baker's/Friday

When was Penny at the baker's?

She was at the baker's on Friday.

5 The/the grocer's/Monday

When was Mrs. Milliams at the grocer's?

She was at the grocer's on Monday.

6 Nicola/the office/Tuesday

When was Nicola was at the office?

He was at the office on Tuesday.

What you really value is not what you have, but what you miss.

[唐义均]《新概念英语语法词汇练习》《新概念英语自学词典》

## Lesson 69 The car race

[词汇]

year n. 年

race n. 比赛（强调竞技性强、激烈的）

town n. 城镇

crowd n. 人群

stand v. 站立

exciting adj. 使人激动的

just adv. 正好，恰好

finish n. 结尾，结束

winner n. 获胜者

behind prep. 在……之后

way n. 路途（抽象）

game:（强调游戏性的）比赛

match:（一般的）比赛

in the race: 在比较赛中

at the race: 在赛场上

car race: 在车赛

every year: 每年

last year: 去年

next year: 明年

There is a car race near our town every year.

There was a big car race in 1995.

There were twenty cars in the race.

My wife and I were at the race.

Our friends Julie and Jack were at the race, too.

own: 自己的

owner: 所有者

of one's own: 某人自己的

I want a car of my own.

in the crowd: 在人群中

You can see us in the crowd.

crowd: (v.)挤上去

get on the bus

crowd into

I get up at 7 o'clock every morning. Then I crowd into the bus.

crowded:(adj.)拥挤的

It was very crowded there.

Usually I get up at six o'clock. I have breakfast at half past seven. I get to the bus stop at eight o'clock. Usually it's very crowded there. Then I crowd into the bus. Usually it's very crowded in the bus, too.

in fact: 事实上

In fact it's very crowded everywhere in our city.

interesting: 有趣的

surprise, amuse, embarrass

interested: 有趣的

interest:(v.)(n.)有趣的

excite: 使激动

This movie interests me.

I have no interest in this.

I am interested in this book.

含有-ed的形容词，表达“使人产生…的情绪”（被动）

This is an interesting book.

He is an interesting man.

This is exciting news.

含有-ing的形容词，表达“…情绪”（主动）

I am interested in this book.

She is excited at the news.

It is an exciting finish.

just用法:

1 用在名词和名词词组前

2 用在形容词和副词、介词词组前

just two o'clock

just my size

just here

just behind him

just right

finish:(v.)

直接跟名词; ~+doing sth.

finished

She finished her homework yesterday.

When did she finish her homework?

I finished reading the book last week.

road: 路（具体）

on my way home/to school

street: 街道

highway: 高速路

path: 路径，乡间小路

route: 路线  
avenue: 大街  
lane: 胡同

Question:

[课文]

There is a **car race near our town every year.**

In 1995, there was a big race.

There were **hundreds of** people there.

My wife and I were **at the race.**

Our friends Julie and Jack were there, too.

You can see us **in the crowd.**

We **are standing** on the left.

There were twenty cars in the race.

They were English cars, French cars, German cars, Italian cars, American cars and Japanese cars.

It was **an exciting finish.**

The winner was Billy Stewart.

He was in car number fifteen.

Five other cars were **just** behind him.

**On the way home**, my wife **said** to me, 'Don't drive so quickly! You're not Billy Stewart!'

thousand: 千  
million: 百万

[词汇·略]

Lesson 70 When were they there?

[词汇]

stationer n. 文具店

Denmark n. 丹麦

at the stationer's

A Complete these sentences using at, on or in.

1 We were at the stationer's on Monday.

2 We were there at four o'clock.

3 They were in Australia in September.

4 They were there in spring.

5 On November 25th, they were in Canada.

6 They were there in 1990.

ON

Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday

Jan.21st Feb.22nd March 23rd April 24th May 25th June 26th

in the morning

on the morning ...（具体某一天）

AT（点钟；某一点，小地方）

IN（国家；季节，年，月）

B Write questions and answers using we/they and at/in/on

Examples:

Sam and Penny/stationer's/Monday

Where were Sam and Penny on Monday?

They were at the stationer's on Monday.

You and Penny/Australia/July

Where were you and Penny in July?

We were in Australia in July.

March 23rd

May 25th

February 22nd

1 You and Susan/the office/March 23rd

Where were you and Susan on March 23rd?

We were at the office on March 23rd.

2 Sam and Penny/India/1986

Where were Sam and Penny in 1986?

They were in India in 1986.

3 You and Penny/the baker's/Saturday

Where were you and Penny on Saturday?

We were at the baker's on Saturday.

4 Sam and Penny/Canada/1993

Where were Sam and Penny in 1993?

They were in Canada in 1993.

5 You and Penny/Austria/August

Where were you and Penny in August?

We were in Austria in August.

6 Sam and Penny/home/May 25th

Where were Sam and Penny on May 25th?

They were at home on May 25th.

7 You and Penny/Finland/December

Where were You and Penny in December?

We were in Finland in December.

8 You and Sam/school/February 22nd

Where were you and Sam on February 22nd?

We were at school on February 22nd.

Lesson 71 He's awful!

[词汇]

awful adj. 让人讨厌的，坏的

telephone v. & n. 打电话；电话

time n. 次（数）

answer v. 接（电话）

last adj. 最后的，前一次的

phone n. 电话（=telephone）

again adv. 又一次地

say (said[sed]) v. 说

awfully:(adv.)=very

I am awfully(very) sorry.

He is awful(terrible).

answer the telephone: 接电话

ring off the telephone: 挂断电话

connect: 连接

disconnect: 断开连接

long distance telephone/call: 长途电话

video/picture telephone: 可视电话

Ron Marston is an awful young man.

He likes Pauline very much.

He telephoned Pauline three times yesterday, and four times the day before yesterday.

He telephoned the office yesterday morning and yesterday afternoon.

Pauline's boss answered the telephone.

The boss said, 'Pauline is typing letters. She can't speak to you now!'

Pauline arrived home at six o'clock.

He telephoned again.

But Pauline didn't answer the phone.

He telephoned again at nine o'clock.

Pauline answered the telephone.

She said, 'Don't telephone my daughter again, please!'

He didn't telephone again.

time: （可数）次数；（不可数）时间

once(twice, three)

once more, once again

Time flies!

Time heals all wounds.

Time and tide wait for no man.

answer:(v.)接电话；(n.)答案

say to oneself: 自言自语

What's the climate like in your country?

What's the weather like in spring?

What's your father like?

What's Ron Marston like?

What's your son like?

[课文]

**What's Ron Marston like, Pauline?**

He's awful!

He telephoned me four times Yesterday, and three times **the day before yesterday**.

He telephoned the office yesterday morning and yesterday afternoon.

My boss **answered the telephone**.

What did your boss say to him?

He said, "Pauline is typing letters. She can't **speak to you** now!"

Then I arrived home at six o'clock yesterday evening. He telephoned again.

But I didn't answer the phone!

Did he telephone again last night?

Yes, he did.

He telephoned at nine o'clock.

What did you say to him?

I said, "**This is Pauline's mother**. Please don't telephone my daughter again!"

Did he telephone again?

No, he didn't!

[Questions]

What's Ron Marston like? Pauline?

He's an awful young man!

He telephoned Pauline four times yesterday, and three times the day before yesterday.

He telephoned the office yesterday morning and afternoon.

The boss answered the telephone.

He said, 'Pauline is typing letters. She can't speak to you now!'

Pauline arrived home at six o'clock yesterday evening.

Ron Marston telephoned again.

But Pauline didn't answer the phone!

Marston telephoned at nine o'clock last night.

Pauline answered the phone.

She said, 'This is Pauline's mother. Please don't telephone my daughter again!'

Ron Marston didn't telephone again.

[词汇 • 略]

Lesson 72 When did you ... ?

today

this morning

this afternoon

this evening

tonight

yesterday

yesterday morning

yesterday afternoon

yesterday evening

last night

the day before yesterday

the day before yesterday in the morning

the day before yesterday in the afternoon

the day before yesterday in the evening

the night before last

A Complete these sentences

Example:

she/air the room/yesterday (aired)

What did she do yesterday?

She aired the room yesterday.

cleaned, opened, sharpened, turned on, listened, boiled, arrived, played, stayed, shaved, climbed, telephoned, called, emptied

He is sitting in an armchair.

QUESTION: Is he sitting in an armchair?

QUESTION: Where is he sitting?

NEGATIVE: He isn't sitting in an armchair.

1 He can come now.

Q: Can he come now?

Q: When can he come?

N: He can't come now.

2 There is a newspaper on the desk.

Q: Is there a newspaper on the desk?

Q: What is (there) on the desk?

N: There isn't a newspaper on the desk.

3 He wants a new car.

Q: Does he want a new car?

Q: What does he want?

N: He doesn't want a new car.

4 He is going to come now.

Q: Is he going to come now?

Q: When is he going to come?

N: He isn't going to come now.

5 They like ice cream.

Q: Do they like ice cream?

Q: What do they like?

N: They don't like ice cream.

6 He comes from Germany.

Q: Does he come from Germany?

Q: Where does he come from?

N: He doesn't come from Germany.

7 They must go home now.

Q: Must they go home now?

Q: When must they go home?

N: They mustn't go home now.

8 He feels ill.

Q: Does he feel ill?

Q: How does he feel?

N: He doesn't feel ill.

9 He has a headache.

Q: Does he have a headache?

Q: What does he have?

N: He doesn't have a headache.

10 He cleaned his shoes.

Q: Did he clean his shoes?

Q: When did he clean his shoes?

N: He didn't clean his shoes.

## Lesson 73 The way to King Street

[词汇]

week n. 周

London n. 伦敦

suddenly adv. 突然地

bus stop 公共汽车站

smile v. 微笑

pleasantly adv. 愉快地

understand (understood) v. 懂，明白

speak (spoke) v. 讲，说（说话的动作；讲某种语言）

hand n. 手

pocket n. 衣袋

phrasebook n. 短语手册，常用语手册

phrase n. 短语

slowly adv. 缓慢地

weekly 周刊

this week, last week等，前面不能加介词

频率副词、时间副词、地点副词、程度副词、方式

so, very, quite, rather

pretty: (adj.)漂亮的; (adv.)非常，很

enough: 足够

good enough

so good, very good

程度副词一般加在形容词或副词前面，加强一种程度。

地点副词：home, abroad, downtown, upstairs, downstairs

时间副词：yesterday, tomorrow, next ..., three days ..., before

时间和地点副词前面都不能加地点副词[笔误，应为介词]。

频率副词：always, sometimes, usually, often, ever, never

放在be动词之后，行为动词之前；助动词和行为动词之间。表示强调则可放在句首或句末。

方式副词：主语+vi.+方式副词

构成：adj.+ -ly

beautiful

主语+be动词+adj.（叙述）

adj.+ n.（修饰+限定）

warm, warmly, pleasant, pleasantly, slow, slowly, quick, quickly, careful, carefully

方式副词，后面加-ly

形容词修饰名词，起修饰限定的作用

副词修饰动词

It is raining heavily.

I met her yesterday.

She greeted me warmly.

The bus went slowly.

The students are reading book carefully.  
went, smile, smiled, see, saw, put, put into, take out, took, read, read  
Last week I went to London.  
near the bus stop.  
Suddenly I saw a man near a bus stop.  
I greeted him warmly.  
The man smiled pleasantly.  
He put his hand into his pocket slowly.  
He took out a phrasebook quickly.  
He read the phrase slowly.

station: 总站

stopped: 停止

stop to do sth. 停止做某事，停下来去做某事

stop doing sth. 停止做一件事

When the teacher came into the classroom, the students stopped to talk.

When the teacher came into the classroom, the students stopped talking.

catch the thief

stop sb.

laugh: 大笑

laugh at: 嘲笑

giggle: 咯咯笑

smirk: 傻笑

forced laugh: 皮笑肉不笑

He always smiles.

wear a smile

He always wears a smile.

a big smile: 笑容可掬

Tommy's mother is a woman with a big smile.

The man smiled pleasantly.

understanding: (adj.)

[understand 不能用现在进行时]

一般表示人的情感或者心理活动的一类动词，不能用于进行时。

My parents are all understanding.

My wife is understanding.

chat (聊天), say (内容), talk (谈话, 谈论), debate (辩论), dialogue (对话), conversation (一般性交流, 谈话)

say to sb.

say to oneself

I said to myself yesterday.

[lose->lost]

lose one's way: 迷路

I lost my way in London last week.

I said to myself.

ask sb. the way: 问路

I can ask him the way.

the book on the desk

the key to the front door

the way to King Street

Can you tell me the way to King Street, please?

Be frankly (坦率来讲)

Be bluntly (直率讲)

palm 手掌

nail: 指甲

thumb: 大拇指

index finger/forefinger: 食指

middle finger: 中指

ring finger: 无名指

little finger: 小指

green hand: 新手

raise your hand: 举手

shake hands: 握手

wave (one's) hand: 挥手

give sb. a (big) hand: (热烈的) 给某人鼓掌; 帮助某人

read one's hand: 看手相

on the other hand: 另一方面

pocket money: 零花钱

词组:

know well: 对……很了解

I know my father well.

She knows Hong Kong well.

She doesn't know London well.

say to oneself: 自言自语

put into: 把……放进……里面

take out: 拿出……

He put his hand into his pocket, and took out a phrasebook.

When did Mrs. Mills go to London?

Last week.

Does she know London very well?

No, she doesn't know London very well.

What happened?

She lost her way.

What did she see near a bus stop?

A man.

What did she want to do when she saw the man?

She wanted to ask him the way.

Where did she want to go?

She wanted to King Street.

Did the man understand English?

No.

Was he a tourist?

Yes.

What did the man do?

First, smiled pleasantly.

What did the man do next?

He put his hand into his pocket, and took out a phrasebook.

Then what did he do next?

He opened the book and found a phrase.

He read the phrase?

'I am sorry,' I do not speak English.'

[课文]

Last week Mrs. Mills **went** to London. She does not **know** London very **well**, and she **lost her way**. (go, known [笔误, 应为knew], lose)

Suddenly, she **saw** a man near a bus stop. 'I can **ask him the way**.' she **said to herself**. (see, say)

'Excuse me,' she said. 'Can you **tell me the way to King Street**, please?' (told)

The man smiled pleasantly. He did not **understand** English! He spoke German. He was a tourist. (understood, speak)

Then he **put** his hand **into** his pocket, and **took out** a phrasebook. (put, take)

He opened the book and **found** a phrase. He **read** the phrase slowly. 'I am sorry,' he said. 'I do not speak English.' (find, read)

Lesson 74 What did they do?

[词汇]

hurriedly adv. 匆忙地

cut(cut) v. 割, 切

thirstily adv. 口渴地

go(went) v. 走

greet v. 问候, 打招呼

A Look at this

quick ->quickly; thirsty ->thirstily; careful -> carefully

lazy ->lazily

如果是辅音字母加-y,要把-y变-i加-ly

Example:

She smiled pleasantly.

Complete these sentences.

1 He read the phrase slowly.

2 He worked lazily.

3 He cut himself badly.

4 He worked carefully.

5 The door opened suddenly.

B Look at this table:

	does not know		
	<b>read</b>		very hard
	smiled		hurriedly
<b>He</b>	went	a glass of water	<b>slowly</b>
She	shaved	<b>the phrase</b>	very well
We	drank	me	thirstily
The bus	greeted	London	warmly
	greeted		pleasantly
	worked		very much
	enjoyed ourselves		

## Lesson 75 Uncomfortable shoes 不舒适的鞋子

[词汇]

ago adv. 以前

buy(bought) v. 买

pair n. 双，对

fashion n. (服装的) 流行式样

uncomfortable adj. 不舒服的

wear(wore) v. 穿着

语法 宾语从句

一般是名词或代词做宾语

I want an apple.

I like you.

in front of the window

宾语一般是跟在动词或介词后

some of them

主从复合句：主语从句，表语从句，定语从句，状语从句，宾语从句  
在主从复合句中，由一个句子来充当宾语，就是宾语从句。

宾语从句跟在两类词后：

1 表示人的情感或心理活动的形容词

afraid/ sure/ sorry/ glad

主语+be动词+这类词

I am afraid.

They are sure.

She is sorry.

We are glad.

主句和宾语从句中有that连接，后边加句子  
到现在学习的程度，主句多为一般现在时。  
当主句是一般现在时，从句可以用任何时态。

I am afraid that I can't come tomorrow.

I am sorry that I didn't go yesterday.

They are sure that they will win.

I am glad that you can help them.

2 普通动词

think/ know/ believe/ say/ hope/ understand

主语(人)+这类动词+that+从句

I think that you are right.

She knows that you will come.

I believe I can fly.

P 204

Exercise A

He is drinking his milk.

He says that he is drinking his milk.

She has found her pen.

She said that she has found her pen.

They must remain here.

They say that they must remain here.

He remembers you.

He said that he remembers you.

She doesn't speak English.

She says that she doesn't speak English.

They're washing the dishes.

They say that they are washing the dishes.

#### Exercise B

What's the matter with him?

He says that he feels tired.

What do they want?

They say that they want some money.

What's the matter with him?

He says that he feels ill.

What's the matter with her?

She says that she has a headache.

What do you want? What does she want? What does he want?

He says that he wants a haircut.

What's the matter with them?

They say that they are very thirsty.

What do you need? What does she need?

She says that she needs a licence.

What's the matter with her?

She says that she is very cold.

What's matter with him?

He says that he has an earache.

#### 预习P207-208的练习

[单词·略]

ago adv. 以前

P155

buy 买/sale 卖/retail 零售/purchase 大宗购物/market 市场/treat

on sale 打折卖/for sale 在售

sale n./sell v.

This house is for sale.

This house is on sale.

I believe that this house is for sale.

I'm sure that this house is on sale.

sell sb. 出卖、背叛

I will not/never sell you.

marketing manager 市场经理、销售经理

It's my treat. 我来买单

I buy a pair of shoes every month.

My sister bought this pair in the U.S. last month.

My sister didn't buy this pair in the U.S. last month.

Did your sister buy this pair in the U.S. last month?

What did your sister do in the U.S. last month?

What did your sister buy in the U.S. last month?

Where did your sister buy this pair last month?

When did your sister buy this pair in the U.S.?

Who bought this pair in the U.S. last month?

Whose sister bought this pair in the U.S. last month?

Long hair is in fashion now.

Short shirts are in fashion now.

Long hair is not in fashion now.

be out of fashion

Long hair is out of fashion now.

comfort 安慰

comfortable 舒服的、舒适的

uncomfortable 不舒服的

wear 表穿着的状态/put on 表穿上的动作/be dressed in 侧重打扮的意味/have on 表状态

The emperor has nothing on.

Please put on your coat.

The lady is dressed in a blue coat and a large hat.

a girl in white

wear/wears/wore/wearing

I wear a tie every day.

He wears a tie every day.

He wore a blue tie yesterday.

He is wearing a grey tie.

Women always wear uncomfortable shoes.

like

I want a pair of shoes.

I want a pair of shoes like this.

These shoes are not in fashion now.

They were in fashion last year.

This pair of shoes looks very good, but they are very uncomfortable.

They are very uncomfortable, but women always wear uncomfortable shoes.

My sister bought a pair of shoes like this in the U.S. last month.

Can you get a pair of shoes like this for me?

I'm afraid that I can't get a pair of shoes like this for you.

[课文]

Do you have any shoes **like** these?

What size?

Size five.

What colour?

Black.

I'm sorry.

We don't have any.

But my sister bought this pair last month.

Did she buy them here?

No, she bought them in the U.S.

We had some shoes like those a month ago, but we don't have any now.

Can you **get** a pair for me, please?

I'm afraid that I can't.

They were **in fashion** last year and the year before last.

But they're not in fashion this year.

These shoes are in fashion now.

They look very uncomfortable.

They *are* very uncomfortable.

But women always wear uncomfortable shoes!

Exercises

She goes to town every day.

She went to town yesterday.

She meets her friends every day.

She met her friends yesterday.

They drink some milk every.

They drank some milk yesterday.

He swims in the river every day.

He swam in the river yesterday.

She takes him to school every day.

She took him to school yesterday.

He cuts himself every morning.

He cut himself yesterday morning.

text

looked at a photograph

jumped off the wall

walked across the park

washed his hands

worked in an office

asked a question

typed those letters

watched television

talked to the salesman  
thanked her father  
dusted the cupboard  
painted that bookcase  
waited at the bus stop  
wanted a car like that one  
greeted her

look at that photograph/an hour ago  
When did you look at that photograph?  
I looked at that photograph an hour ago.  
walk across the park/last week  
When did you walk across the park?  
I went across the park last week.  
wash your hands/a minute ago  
When did you wash your hands?  
I washed my hands a minute ago.  
work in an office/the year before last  
When did you work in an office?  
I worked in an office the year before last.  
ask a question/five minutes ago  
When did you ask a question?  
I asked a question five minutes ago.  
type those letters/a month ago?  
When did you type those letters?  
I typed those letters a month ago.  
watch television/every day this week  
When did you watch television?  
I watched television every day this week.  
talk to the shop assistant/last month  
When did you talk to the shop assistant?  
I talked to the shop assistant last month.  
thank your father/an hour ago  
When did you thank your father?  
I thanked my father an hour ago.  
dust the cupboard/three days ago  
When did you dust the cupboard?  
I dusted the cupboard three days ago.  
greet her/a minute ago  
When did you greet her?  
I greeted her a minute ago.

Lesson 77 Terrible toothache 要命的牙痛

[词汇]

appointment n. 约会，预约

urgent adj. 紧急的，急迫的

till prep. 直至…为止

-ment 名词后缀

appoint 指派、委派

(don't/doesn't)have an appointment with sb.

do/don't/doesn't/does

hospital

I go to see the doctor every week.

My father goes to see the doctor every week.

I have an appointment with the doctor every week.

My father has an appointment with the doctor every week.

I don't have an appointment with the doctor every week.

My father doesn't have an appointment with the doctor every week.

Do you have an appointment with the doctor every week?

Does your father have an appointment with the doctor every week?

Mr.Croft

Mr.Croft has a terrible toothache.

want to do sth.

He want to see the dentist, but he doesn't have an appointment.

at the hairdresser [疑为笔误，应为hairdresser's]

at the dentist [疑为笔误，应为dentist's]

He is at the dentist.[疑为笔误，应为dentist's]

He is talking to the nurse.

Do you have an appointment?

No, I don't.

Can you come here this afternoon.

The dentist is very busy at the moment.

I'm afraid that he can't see you now.

I can wait, but my toothache can't.

He said that he can wait, but his toothache can't!

Can't you wait?

I know./I don't know./Don't you know?

I didn't go yesterday.

Didn't you go yesterday?

I'm not a student.

Aren't you a student?

I can swim./I can't swim./Can't you swim?

I don't speak English.

Don't you speak English?

He didn't telephone you yesterday.

Didn't you telephone you yesterday?

Can't you wait?

date/have a date/date sb.

What's the matter with Mr.Croft?

He has a terrible toothache.

Is it urgent?

Yes.

Where is he now?

He is at the dentist's.

What is he doing now?

He is talking to the nurse.

What does he want to do?

He wants to see the dentist.

Can the dentist see him now?

No.

Why?

Because the dentist is very busy.

Does Mr.Croft have an appointment?

No, he doesn't.

What time does the nurse ask Mr.Croft to come?

This afternoon.

What time?

Two o'clock.

Can Mr.Croft wait till this afternoon?

What did he say?

He can wait, but his toothache can't.

What's the matter with Mr.Croft?

Mr.Croft has a terrible toothache.

It is very urgent.

He is at the dentist.[疑为笔误，应为dentist's]

He wants to see the dentist.

But he doesn't have an appointment.

ask sb. to do sth.

April 24th

on Monday

ten o'clock 10 a.m.

April 24th, on Monday, at ten o'clock./10 a.m.

The nurse asks Mr.Croft to come at April 24th, on Monday, at ten 10 a.m.

But he thinks that is too late.

2 p.m.

The nurse asks him to come at 2 p.m. this afternoon.

Mr.Croft thinks that he can wait, but his toothache can't!

[课文]

Good morning. Mr. Croft.

Good morning, nurse.

I **want to** see the dentist, please.

Do you **have an appointment**?

No, I don't.

Is it urgent?

Yes, it is.

It's very urgent.

I feel awful.

**I have a terrible toothache.**

Can you come **at 10 a.m. on Monday, April 24th**?

I must **see the dentist** now, nurse.

The dentist is very busy **at the moment**.

Can you come at 2 p.m.?

That's very late.

Can the dentist see me now?

**I'm afraid** that he can't, Mr. Croft.

**Can't you wait till this afternoon?**

I can wait, but my toothache can't!

复习知识点

at用于小地方或点钟的前边

on用于星期的前边或一个月中的具体的某一天

in在月份，季节，前，国家或大的地方前

Exercise P160

She buys a new car every year. She bought a new car every year.

airs -> aired

lose -> lost

listens -> listened

empties -> emptied

It's eight o'clock. When did you see him?(half an hour ago)

I saw him at half past seven.

It's Friday. When did she go to London?(the day before yesterday)

She went to London on Wednesday.

It's June. When did Mr.Jones buy that car?(last month)

He bought that car in March.

It's 1997. When did you paint this room?(last year)

I painted this room in 1996.

It's 5th January. When did she meet him?(two months ago)

She met him on the 5th November.

It's a quarter past eleven. When did they arrive?(half an hour ago)

They arrived at a quarter to eleven.

It's Sunday. When did he lose his pen?(yesterday)

He lost his pen in Saturday.

## Lesson 79 Carol's shopping list 卡罗尔的购物单

[词汇]

shopping n. 购物

list n. 单子

vegetable n. 蔬菜

need v. 需要

hope v. 希望

thing n. 事情

money n. 钱

make a shopping list

hope to do sth.

cabbage/pea/bean/tomato/potato

greengrocer/greengrocer's

fruit/pear/apple/banana/grape/peach

I must go to the greengrocer's to buy some peaches.

get

I must go to the greengrocer's to get some peaches.

She must go to the greengrocer's to get some peaches.

baker/baker's

I must go to the baker's to get some biscuits.

They must go to the baker's to get some cakes.

butcher's/lamb/beef/steak/mince/chicken

I must go to the butcher's to get some lamb.

Mrs. Wood must go to the butcher's to get some chicken.

stationer's/envelope/pad/glue/magazine/newspaper

Lucy must go to the stationer's to get some pencils.

I must go to the stationer's to get some writing paper.

Jim wants to write a letter to his mother. What does he need?

He needs envelopes, writing paper and glue.

What must he do?

He must go to the stationer's to get these.

This afternoon, some of my friends are going to see me, so I'm going to cook some meals for them. What do I need?

I need to buy some vegetables and some meat.

What must I do?

I must go to the butcher's and also the greengrocer's.

## Lesson 80 I must go to the ... 我必须去

grocer's/groceries/cheese/eggs/butter/honey/jam/biscuit

to 的用法

1 介词，后跟名词或代词，动词的ing形式

2 动词不定式，后跟动词的原形

1) 动词 + to + 动词原形

2) 动词 + 人 + to + 动词原形

I want/ go to school

I want to go to school.

动词不定式是由动词构成的语法术语，结构是 to + 动词原形

some of them

一般情况下，介词和动词后跟宾语（即名词或代词）

I want an apple.

I want her.

I want to eat an apple./to eat an apple 做宾语

动词不定式在句子中除了谓语不能做外，可以做其它的各种成分。

I want her to eat an apple./ to eat an apple 做宾语补足语

P163

I must go to the grocer's to get some groceries.（目的状语）

greengrocer's/fruit/vegetables

pears/oranges/bananas/beans/peas/cabbages

butcher's/meat/lamb/beef/steak/mince/chicken

newsagent's/stationery/glue/envelopes/writing paper/newspapers/magazines

baker's/bread/cakes/chemist's/aspirins/medicine

[词汇]

groceries n. 食品杂货

fruit n. 水果

stationery n. 文具

newsagent n. 报刊零售人

chemist n. 化学家

Exercise B

Have you got any cheese? (grocer's)

I need a lot of cheese. I haven't got much.

I must go to the grocer's to get some cheese.

Has he got any envelopes? (newsagent's)

He need a lot of envelopes. He hasn't got many.

He must go to the newsagent's to get some envelopes.

Lesson 79 Carol's shopping list

need

needn't 实义动词/情态动词

need 做实义动词时，可以加s/ed

needs/needed

need 做情态动词时，没有时态，人称，数格的变化，可以直接加否定形式。不能单独做谓语，后边加动词

原形。

1 need + to + 动词原形 -> need 是实义动词

2 need + 动词原形 -> need 是情态动词

I want an apple.

The children need milk.

加 do/ don't 构成否定或疑问形式。

The children don't need milk.

Do the children need milk?

What do the children need?

What do you need?

What does the girl need?

What do we need?

We need a lot of things.

She needs a house.

She doesn't need a house.

Does she need a house?

What does she need?

1 在肯定句中，need不可以象 I can go home.中的can的用法一样在肯定句中直接做情态动词，而是做实义动词。

I need to go home.

在肯定句中，need后只跟动词不定式，不跟动词原形。

而在否定句和疑问句中，情况就不是这样了。

I needn't study. (need 情态动词)

I don't need to study. (need 实义动词)

Need you study? (need 情态动词)

Do you need to study? (need 实义动词)

hope 可以做名词或动词

Where there is life, there is hope.[留得青山在，不怕没柴烧。]

hope 做动词时，可用作：

1 hope to do sth.

2 hope that

I hope to study abroad next year.

I hope that I/you study abroad next year.

hopeful/hopeless

shopping list

关于英语学习的若干指导：

1 慎重选择口语班

2 认真学好语法

[词汇·略]

make a shopping list

hope to do

have 有

have got/has got

在1 过去时 2 重复的动作，在这两种情况下，have got/has got 不能代替have

I had a cold yesterday.

She always has a headache.

I have got a lot of friends.

haven't

I haven't got a lot of friends.

a lot of 后可以跟可数名词，也可以跟不可数名词

I have got a lot of money.

在否定句和疑问句中，a lot of 后如果跟可数名词，则a lot of 换成many; a lot of 后如果跟不可数名词，则a lot of 换成much.

I have many friends.（错误，一般不这样说）

many/much

Have you got many friends?

Have you got much money?

I haven't got much money either.

[课文]

What are you doing, Carol?

I'm **making a shopping list**, Tom.

What do we **need**?

We need **a lot of** thing this week.

I must go to the grocer's.

We **haven't got** much **tea or coffee**, and we haven't got any sugar or jam.

What about vegetables?

I must go to the greengrocer's.

We haven't got many tomatoes, but we've got a lot of potatoes.

I must go to the butcher's, too.

We need some meat.

We haven't got any meat **at all**.. ->not at all

Have we got any **beer and wine**?

And I'm not going to get any!

**I hope that** you've got some money.

I haven't got much.

Well, I haven't got much either!

Carol is making a shopping list.

What do we need?

We need a lot of things this week.

What does Carol need?

I must go to the grocer's.

We haven't got much tea or coffee, and we haven't got any sugar or jam.

I must go to the greengrocer's.

We haven't got many potatoes, but we've got a lot of tomatoes.

I've/ we've/ they've/ she's/ he's

I must go to the butcher's.  
We need some meat.  
We haven't got any meat at all.  
I hope that you've got some money.  
I haven't got much.  
I haven't got much either!

[课文·略]

Lesson 80 I must go to the ... 我必须去

I don't have any eggs.  
I haven't got many eggs.  
He doesn't have any coffee.  
He hasn't got much coffee.  
some/any 一些 many/much 许多  
I don't have any butter.  
I haven't got much butter.  
You don't have any envelopes.  
You haven't got many envelopes.  
We don't have any milk.  
We haven't got much milk.  
She doesn't have any biscuits.  
She hasn't got many biscuits.  
They don't have any stationery.  
They haven't got much stationery.

Have you got any cheese?  
I need a lot of cheese. I haven't got much.  
I must go to the grocer's to get some cheese.  
Has he got any envelopes?  
He needs a lot of envelopes. He hasn't got many.  
He must go to the newsagent's to get some envelopes.  
Have they got any bread?  
They need a lot of bread. They haven't got much.  
They must go to the baker's to get some bread.  
Has she got any eggs?  
She needs a lot of eggs. She hasn't got many.  
She must go to the grocer's to get some eggs.  
Have they got any magazines?  
They need a lot of magazines. They haven't got many.  
They must go to the newsagent's to get some magazines.  
Have you got any beef?  
You need a lot of beef. You haven't got much.  
You must go to the butcher's to get some beef.  
Has he got any medicine?

He need a lot of medicine. He hasn't got much.  
He must go to the chemist's to get some medicine.

## Lesson 81 Roast beef and potatoes

[词汇]

bath n. 洗澡

nearly adv. 几乎，将近

ready adj. 准备好的，完好的

dinner n. 正餐，晚餐

roast adj. 烤的

have a bath/take a shower

原形 have

第三人称单数 has

过去时 had

现在进行时 having

I have a bath every day.

My brother has a bath every day.

I had a bath yesterday.

He is having a bath.

Tom is having a bath upstairs.

I want to have a bath.

I want you to have a bath.

My father wants to have a bath.

My father wants my brother to have a bath.

The dinner is ready?

Is the dinner ready?

It's ready.

It's nearly ready.

be ready to do sth.

Leifeng is always ready to help others.

Are you ready?

restaurant/cafe[小店]

saute/boil 煮/steam 蒸/fry 煎/deep fry 炸/roast 烤（土豆）/bake 烤（面包）/grill 烧烤/instant boil 涮

What is Tom doing?

He is having a bath.

What is Carol doing?

She is cooking dinner.

Who is Sam?

Sam is Tom's friend.

What did Sam and Tom do this afternoon?

Where did they go?

Sam/downstairs/in Tom's living room

What does Tom ask Sam to do when Tom sees Sam?

No.

What else does Tom ask Sam to do?

Have a glass of whisky.

Does Sam want to have a glass of whisky?

What did they do this noon?

They had lunch together.

Where did they go?

They went to a restaurant.

What did they have?

They had roast beef and potatoes.

What is Carol cooking?

Roast beef and potatoes, too.

Is Carol very happy?

No, she is a litter bit disappointed.

Tom's having a bath upstairs.

Carol is cooking in the kitchen.

Sam is their friend.

He is their living room.

Tom asks Sam to have a cigarette.

But Sam doesn't want to have a cigarette/smoke.

Tom wants Sam to have a glass of whisky.

Sam thinks that it's a good idea.

They can have dinner at 7 o'clock.

They are going to have roast beef and potatoes.

But Sam and Tom had lunch together this noon.

They went to a restaurant.

They had roast beef and potatoes.

Carol feels very disappointed.

[课文]

Hi, Carol!

Where's Tom?

He's upstairs.

He's having a bath.

Tom!

Yes?

Sam's here.

I'm nearly ready.

Hello, Sam.

Have a cigarette. ->have/smoke

No, thanks, Tom.

Have a glass of whisky then. ->have/drink

OK. Thanks.

Is dinner ready, Carol?

It's nearly ready.

We can have dinner at seven o'clock.

Sam and I had lunch together today. We went to a restaurant.

What did you have?

We had roast beef and potatoes.

Oh!

What's the matter, Carol?

Well, you're going to have roast beef and potatoes again tonight!

Lesson 82 I had ... 我吃（喝，从事）了

breakfast/lunch/tea/dinner

a meal/a swim/a bath/a haircut/a lesson/a party/a holiday/a good time

#### Exercise A

drank

enjoyed yourself

are eating

went for

ate/take

I had a cup of coffee. I drank a cup of coffee.

They had a meal at a restaurant.

They ate a meal at a restaurant.

We had a holiday last month.

We went for a holiday last month.

Have a biscuit.

Take a biscuit.

You had a good time.

You enjoyed yourself.

They are having their lunch. They are eating their lunch.

I had a glass of milk. I drank a glass of milk.

#### Exercise B

What is he going to do? (a glass of whisky)

He's going to have a glass of whisky.

What are they going to do? (breakfast)

They are going to have breakfast.

What are they doing? (lunch)

They are having lunch.

What must he do? (tea)

He must have some tea.

What did they do? (dinner)

They had dinner.

What must they do? (a meal)

they must have a meal.

What is he going to do? (a swim)

He is going to have a swim.

What is he doing? (a bath)

He is having a bath.

What did he do? (a haircut)

He had a haircut.

What are they doing? (a lesson)

They are having a lesson.

What did they do? (a party)

They had a party.

What must they do? (a holiday)

They must have a holiday.

What are they going to do? (a good time)

They are going to have a good time.

## Lesson 83 Going on holiday 度假

### [词汇]

mess n. 杂乱，凌乱

pack v. 包装，打包，装箱

suitcase n. 手提箱

leave v. 离开

already adv. 已经

### 语法

现在完成时：

1 表示在过去不确定的时间里发生的并与现在有关某种联系的动作

2 表示开始于过去并持续到现在的动作

过去时强调过去某个特定的时间发生的动作或存在的状态

现在完成时表示过去不确定的时间里发生的动作对现在造成的影响和结果，这个动作也许到现在结束，也许还要继续下去。

主语 + has/have + 动词的过去分词

否定形式：hasn't/haven't

疑问形式：把 has/have 提前

PP. 过去分词

过去分词的规则形式与过去时是一样的。

buy bought bought

find found found

get got got

have had had

hear heard heard

leave left left

lose lost lost

make made made

meet met met

send sent sent

sweep swept swept

tell told told

cut cut cut

put put put

read read read

set set set

shut shut shut

do did done

come came come

give gave given

swim swam swum

take took taken  
eat ate eaten  
go went gone  
rise rose risen  
see saw seen  
speak spoke spoken

I see a film every week.  
My mother sees a film every week.  
I saw a film last week.  
I have seen the film.  
I haven't seen the film.  
Have you seen the film?  
do did done  
I do my homework every day.  
My sister does her homework every day.  
I did my homework the day before yesterday.  
I have done my homework.  
I haven't done my homework.  
Have you done your homework?  
Has she done her homework?  
have had had  
have lunch  
I have lunch at 12 o'clock every day.  
I had lunch at 12 o'clock yesterday.  
I have had lunch.  
I haven't had lunch.  
Have you had lunch?

已经

强调过去不确定时间发生的动作或状态对现在的影响，而且也有可能继续下去。

He is a good student.  
He was a good student.  
He has (always) been a good student.

主语 + have/has + 动词过去分词

pack/packed/packed/packing

suitcase

pack our suitcases

What are you going to do?

We are going to pack out suitcases.

What are you doing?

We are packing out suitcases?

What did you do yesterday?

We packed our suitcases yesterday?

What have you done?

What did you do?

What have they done?

What has your mother done?

What have the students done?

What have you done?

We have packed our suitcases.

What has she done?

She has packed her suitcases.

already 已经/yet 还/just 刚刚/recently 最近/so far 到目前为止

already 一般用于肯定句，而在表示惊讶语气时也用于疑问句中。

yet 一般用于否定句和疑问句中

sell sold sold

I'm going to sell my house.

I sold my house last week.

I didn't sell my house last week.

Did you sell your house last week?

When did you sell your house?

What did you do last week?

Who sold my house last week?

I have (already) sold my house.

I haven't sold my house yet.

Have you sold your house (yet)?

Have you sold your house already?

[词汇 • 略]

Excuse the mess, Sam.

suitcases

pack one's suitcases

leave/leaving/left/left

The boss is going to leave.

The boss is leaving tomorrow.

The boss left yesterday.

The boss has already left.

buy/bought/bought

I want to buy a house.

He bought a house last year.

He has bought a house.

He didn't buy a house last year.

Did he buy a house last year?

He hasn't bought a house yet.

Has he bought a house yet?

Lesson Have you ... yet? 你已经……了吗?

buy/bought/bought

find/found/found

get/got/got

have/had/had

hear/heard/heard

heave/left/left

lose/lost/lost

make/made/made

meet/met/met

send/sent/sent

sweep/swept/swept

tell/told/told

She found her pen yesterday.

She didn't find her pen yesterday.

Did she find her pen yesterday?

When did she find her pen?

Who found her pen yesterday?

She has found her pen.

She hasn't found her pen.

Has she found her pen yet?

Mr. Jones met me last week.

Mr. Jones didn't meet me last week.

Did Mr. Jones meet you last week?

When did Mr. Jones meet you?

Mr. Jones has met him.

Mr. Jones hasn't met them.

Has Mr. Jones met his son?

tell/told/told

I want to tell you the news.

She told me the news the day before yesterday.

When did she tell you the news?

She hasn't told him the news.

Has she told him the news yet?

P180 Exercise

He bought a house last year.

He found his pen a minute ago.

Did he find his pen a minute ago?

He didn't find his pen a minute ago.

He got a new television last week.

Did he get a new television last week?

He didn't get a new television last week.

hear/heard/heard

We heard the news on the radio.

Did you hear the news on the radio?

We didn't hear the news on the radio.

leave/left/left

They left this morning.

Did they leave this morning?

They didn't leave this morning.

lose/lost/lost

He lost his umbrella yesterday.

Did he lose his umbrella yesterday?

He didn't lose his umbrella yesterday.

sweep/swept/swept

Did you sweep the floor this morning?

I didn't sweep the floor this morning.

#### Exercise B

they/buy/a new house/two weeks ago

Have they bought a new house yet?

Yes, they have already bought a new house.

When did they buy a new house?

They bought a new house two weeks ago.

he/have breakfast/at half past seven

Has he had breakfast yet?

Yes, he has already had breakfast.

When did he have breakfast?

He had breakfast at half past seven.

she/make the bed/this morning

Has she made the bed yet?

Yes, she has already made the bed.

When did she make the bed?

She made the bed this morning.

he/send the letter/the day before yesterday

Has he sent the letter yet?

Yes, he has already sent the letter.

When did he send the letter?

He sent the letter the day before yesterday.

she/tell him the truth/last night tell/told/told

Has she told him the truth yet?

Yes, she has already told him the truth.

When did she tell him the truth?

She told him the truth last night.

[词汇·略]

listen to the tape

Where is Sam now?

He is in Tom's home.

What are Carol and Tom doing now?

They are having lunch.

Has Sam had lunch? When did he have lunch?

Half past 12.

What did Tom ask Sam to do?

To have lunch with them.

What did Carol ask Sam to do?

To drink a cup of coffee.

Did Sam want to have a cup of coffee?

No.

Why?

Because he has already had a cup.

When did he have?

After lunch.

Is Carol's living room very tidy?

No.

Why is it untidy?

Because they are packing their suitcases.

Why are they packing their suitcases?

They are going to have a holiday.

Has Sam had his holiday yet? What did Sam say?

He has already had his holiday.

Where did he go?

He stayed at home.

Sam is a lucky man. Is that right?

Yes.

Sam is in Carol's living room.

Carol and Tom are having lunch.

want sb. to do sth.

Tom wants Sam to have lunch with them.

Sam says that he has already had lunch.

He had lunch at half past 12.

Carol wants Sam to have a cup of coffee, but Sam says that he has already had a cup.

He says that he had a cup after lunch.

Let's go into the living room.

We can have coffee there.

This room is very untidy.

Excuse the mess.

We are packing our suitcases.

We're going to have a holiday.

We're going to leave tomorrow.

Sam has already had his holiday, but he stayed at home.

[课文]

Hello, Sam.

Come in.

Hi, Sam. We're **having lunch**.

Do you **want to have lunch** with us?

No, thank you, Tom.

I've already had lunch.

I had lunch at half past twelve.

Have a cup of coffee then.  
I've just had a cup, thank you.  
I had one after my lunch.  
Let's go into the living room, Carol.  
We can have our coffee there.  
Excuse the mess, Sam.  
This room's very untidy.  
We're packing our suitcases.  
We're going to leave tomorrow.  
Tom and I are going to have a holiday.  
Aren't you lucky!  
When are you going to have a holiday, Sam?  
I don't know.  
I've already had my holiday this year.  
Where did you go?  
I stayed at home!

[词汇 • 略]

Lesson 84 Have you had ...? 你已经……了吗?

Have some coffee. I've already had some.  
Have a banana. I've already had one.  
Have some beer. I've already had some.  
Have an apple. I've already had one.  
关于 's 缩写形式

例如：She's 是She is 还是she has 的判断办法：She has 的后边不会是动词原形或形容词，而应该是动词的过去分词。

I have=I've They have=They've We have=We've  
You have=You've She has=She's He has=He's  
Have a peach. I've already had one.  
Have some milk. I've already had some.  
Have a glass of water. I've already had one.  
Have a biscuit. I've already had one.  
Have some cheese. I've already had some.

P172 Exercise B

Have you had any vegetables or fruit?

I haven't had any vegetables.

I've just had some fruit.

1 He hasn't had any beans. He's just had some peas.

2 They haven't had any tea. They've just had some coffee.

3 I haven't had any apples. I've had some peaches.

4 I haven't had any cabbage. I've just had some lettuce.

5 She hasn't had any beer. She's just had some wine.

6 He hasn't had any lamb. He's just had some beef.

7 They haven't had any tea. They've just had some milk.

8 She hasn't had any meat. She's had some vegetables.

9 Have you had any chicken or steak?

I haven't had any chicken. I've had some steak.

10 Have they had any bananas or oranges?

They haven't had any bananas. They've just had some oranges.

补充材料

P23

UNIT TWENTY-THREE

1 语法

telephone telephoned

try tried

buy bought

have had

be been

see seen

leave left

I have read the book./I haven't read the book.

I have stayed here for about two months.

She has gone to my hometown.

They have never been to the Great Wall.

already/yet/never/before/for/since

dream-boat 理想中的人或事物

Romeo/Juliet 罗密欧与朱丽叶，热恋中的人

brown-noser 谄媚的人，拍马的人 [存疑，词典中做 brown-nose]

sell like hot cakes 热销

Let sleeping dogs lie. 别惹麻烦

It is never too late to learn. 活到老，学到老。

Where there is life there is hope. 留得青山在，不怕没柴烧。

P24

have a cigarette

have lunch

be having

have a glass of whisky

have dinner

has/had

have roast beef

have a holiday

have had

1 are ... going to do

2 cleaned

3 have ... had

4 is having

5 have

6 takes

7 didn't enjoy

8 isn't ... had

9 goes

10 spoke

1 Put your hand in my pocket. Don't put your hand in my pocket.

2 Let's go to the classroom. Let's not go to the classroom.

3 I had breakfast at 7:30 a.m.. I didn't have breakfast at 7:30 a.m..

4 She has a nice suitcase. She hasn't/doesn't have a nice suitcase.

5 He is going to see me next week. He isn't going to see me next week.

6 Last/buy/car/last month

Mr. Jones bought a car last month.

7 She/at the dairy/now

She is at the dairy now. She isn't at the dairy now.

8 they/always have lunch/noon

Do they always have lunch at noon?

9 He/read/book/yesterday/slow

He read the book slowly yesterday.

1 Excuse me, do you have an appointment?

2 I feel awful. I have a terrible toothache.

3 He doesn't know London very well, so he lost his way last week.

4 They took out a pen./ They took out a pen from the pocket.

5 She is going to telephone you today.

P23

Can't you come with me?

Sorry, I'm very busy now.

Won't you have some apples?

Yes, I'd love to.

Aren't you lucky?

Isn't it a beautiful day?

Yes, it is.

Don't you tell him she is at home?

blind date 第三者安排的约会

pie in the sky 不切实际的想法

(the) last thing/person/place

down-to-earth 实际的

Where there's a will, there's a way. 有志者事竟成。

Never trouble troubles until troubles trouble you. 不要自找麻烦。

Practice makes perfect. 熟能生巧。

America is the last place I want to go.

You are the last person I want to marry.

## Lesson 85 Paris in the spring 巴黎之春

[词汇]

Paris n. 巴黎

cinema n. 电影院

film n. 电影

beautiful adj. 漂亮的

city n. 城市

never adv. 从来没有

ever adv. 在任何时候

现在完成时

have/has been to 曾经去过

have/has gone to 已经向某处去，到达与否不确定

I have been to Paris.

They have gone to Paris.

My father has gone to H.K..

They have been to New York.

My mother has been to Shanghai.

We have been there.

She has gone there.

They have gone aboard.

Have you been to Paris?

I haven't been to Paris yet.

see/saw/seen

I saw a film last week.

I saw the film on television.

I have seen the film.

It's a good film.

It's an old film, but it's a good film.

Its name is " Paris in the spring".

[词汇 • 略]

I have never been to Paris.

I have ever been to Paris.

France 法国

go to the cinema/ theater(theatre)

movie

country 国家/ village 村庄/ city 城市/ town 城镇/ province 省/ municipality 直辖市/autonomous region 自治区/  
zone 特区/county 县/ township 乡

Listen to the tape

Paris is a beautiful city.

The weather in Paris is not very good.  
I have ever been to Paris.  
I have just been to the cinema.  
A new film is on.  
What's on?  
"Paris in the Spring".  
It's an old film, but it's a very good film.  
I saw it on television last year.  
I've never been to Paris.  
George was in Paris last April.  
It rained all the time.  
Just like London.

[课文]

hello, Ken.  
Hi, George.  
Have you just **been to** the cinema?  
Yes, I have.  
**What's on?**  
"Paris in the Spring".  
Oh, I've already seen it.  
I saw it on television last year.  
It's an old film, but it's very good.  
Paris is a beautiful city.  
I've never been there.  
Have you ever been there, Ken?  
Yes, I have.  
I was there in April.  
Paris in the spring, eh?  
It was Spring, but the weather was awful.  
It rains **all the time**.  
Just like London.

Lesson 86 What have you done? 你已经做了什么?

Exercise

1 has  
2 \  
3 has  
4 has  
5 \  
6 \  
7 has

aired/ cleaned/ opened/ sharpened/ turned on/ listened to/ boiled/ answered/ emptied/ asked/ typed/ washed/  
walked/ painted/ dusted

Air the room!

I've already aired the room.

I aired the room this morning.

1 I've already cleaned my shoes. I cleaned my shoes last night.

2 I've already opened the window. I opened the window an hour ago.

3 I've already sharpened my pencil. I sharpened my pencil a minute ago.

4 I've already turned on the television. I turned on the television ten minutes ago.

9 I've already washed my hands. I washed my hands five minutes ago.

Boil the egg

My mother has already boiled the egg. She boiled the egg yesterday.

11 George has already painted that bookcase. He painted that bookcase a year ago.

8 Pamela has already typed that letter. She typed that letter this morning.

Lesson 87 A car crash 车祸

[词汇]

attendant n. 接待员

bring (brought/brought) v. 带来，送来

garage n. 车库，汽车修理厂

crash n. 碰撞

lamp-post 灯杆

repair v. 修理

try v. 努力，设法

try go do sth.

attend 参加/join 参加某个组织，成为其成员/join in 与某人一道参加某种活动/take part in 与某人一道参加某种活动，强调在其中起了作用

attend school 上学

attend a meeting 出席会议

attend a wedding 参加婚礼

attend a lecture 参加演讲

bring 带来/take 带走/fetch 去拿来/get 拿，常用于口语中

Can you get a pair for me?

I bought my car here three days ago.

go into the garage

let sb.do sth.

Let's go home.

Let's go into the garage.

Let me help you.

have 可以和具有动词和名词词性的动词搭配成词组

have a crash/have a swim/have a walk/have a try/have a look

Let me have a look.

Let me have a try.

Let's have walk after supper.

I have a swim in the river after supple every day.

He has a crash every week.

He had a crash last week again.

I didn't have a crash last week.

Did you have a crash last week?

Didn't you have a crash?

Yes, I did.

drive/drove

drive into/drove into

I drove my car into the wall last week.

I drove my car into a lamp-post three days ago, then I brought my car here.

repair 用一定的技能修理什么东西

fix 同上，一般美语中用的较多

mend 修理打破或打碎的东西，一般指结构较为简单的，不需要特殊技能

do up 修理小东西，翻新，结构比较简单patch 打补丁，衣服或车胎坏了，修补一下

repair/repared

I want you to repair my car.

I repaired my car yesterday.

I have (already) repaired my car.

They are repaired my car.

Have your mechanics repaired my car yet?

No, they haven't.

They are still working on it.

have a try.

It's a good try.

try one's best/do one's best

Do your best!

Try your best!

I want to try my best.

I have already tried my best.

try to do sth.

Can your mechanics repair my car?

They are still working on it.

They're trying to repair it.

manage to do sth. 设法做成了某事

manager

I managed to repair my car yesterday.

try one's luck

listen to the tape

Who drove his car into a lamp-post?

Mr. Wood.

Where is Mr. Wood now?

Garage.

What does he want to do?

He wants his car.

Who is he talking to?

Attendant.

Is his car ready?

When did he bring his car here?

Three days ago.

Are the mechanics still working on it?

Yes.

Can the mechanics repair Mr. Wood's car?

Maybe.

What are they doing?

They are trying to repair.

what does Mr. Wood need?

He needs a new car.

Who? Mr. Wood.

What's his car number? It's LFZ 312G.

Mr. Wood is talking to the attendant.

He is in the garage.

He wants his car.

He brought his car here three days ago.

He had a car crash last week.

He drove his car into a lamp-post.

But his car is not ready yet.

The mechanics haven't finished yet.

They are still working on it.

They're trying to repair it.

But to tell the truth, Mr. Wood needs a new car.

[词汇 • 略]

[课文]

Is my car ready yet?

I don't know, sir.

What's the number of your car?

It's LFZ 312G.

When did you **bring** it **to** us? bring sth. to sb./bring sb. sth.

I brought it here three days ago.

Ah yes, I remember now.

Have your mechanics finished yet?

No, they're still **working on** it.

**Let's go into** the garage and **have a look at** it.

Isn't that your car?

Well, it was my car.

Didn't you have a crash?

That's right.

I **drove it into** a lamp-post.

Can your mechanics repair it?

Well, they're trying to repair it, sir.

But to tell you the truth, you need a new car!

Bring me some apples!

Bring some apples to me!

Isn't that your car? Aren't you lucky?

[词汇 • 略]

补充材料 P14 UNIT TWELVE

1 his -> my

2 too -> either

3 is a photograph

4 an -> a

5 are -> is 或者 child -> children

6 typist -> typists

7 are -> is 或者 dress -> dresses

8 he -> his

9 Jones -> Jones'

10 is the same

11 to -> for

12 What are you going? -> What are you going to do?

13 have -> be

There is a sports meeting here every year.

There was a sports meeting here last year.

There is going to be ...

14 it me -> it to me

15 Put on them -> Put them on

16 some -> any

17 window, air -> window and air

语法练习

1 some ... any

2 some ... a

3 any

4 a ... any

5 some ... a

6 some

7 any ... a

8 A ... The

## UNIT THIRTEEN

small/snow/plate/train/class/cry/quite/queen/proud/comport/eighth/time/long/bank/answer/think

Kill the time 消磨时间

Cheat the journey 闲极无聊的聊天

Serve one right 某人应得的报应

A plain Jane 普通人

Make a noise in the world 喧闹一时

Take it easy 别着急

Go Dutch 各人付自己的帐，AA制

In Rome do as the Romans do. 入乡随俗

Rome was not built in a day. 冰冻三尺，非一日之寒。

Don't count your chickens before they're hatched. 不要过早的乐观。

## Lesson 89 For sale

[词汇]

believe v. 相信，认为

may modal verb （用于请求许可）可以

how long 多长

since prep. 自从

why adv. 为什么

sell v. 卖，出售

because conj. 因为

retire v. 退休

cost v. 花费

pound n. 英镑

worth prep. 值……钱

penny n. 便士

sell/sold/sold

cost/cost/cost

believe + that 从句（宾语从句）

宾语从句是指一个句子做宾语

动词/介词 + 宾语（名词，代词）

表示人类的情感或心理活动的形容词

afraid 恐怕

sure 确定的，有把握的

glad 高兴的

sorry 抱歉

be + adj. + that 从句

主句是一般现在时的时候，从句可以用任何时态。

e.g. I am afraid I can't come tomorrow.

e.g. I am sure you need an X-ray.

e.g. I am glad you went yesterday.

e.g. I am sorry I didn't come

yesterday.

表示普通意义的动词，相信，认为……

think, know, say

e.g. He says he is a good man.

e.g. I think you are right.

e.g. I believe I can fly.

for sale 待售

e.g. This house is for sale.

e.g. I believe this house is for sale.

e.g. I'm sure this house is for sale.

believe in sb. 信任某人

trust 信任（侧重于信任某人的能力）

belief n. (某人的) 信仰, 信条

e.g. You may go home now. 你现在可以回家。

e.g. You may have a look. 你可以看一下。

e.g. May I have a look at it? 我可以看一下吗?

how far 多远

how often 多经常

how soon 多快

how many 多少 (可数名词)

how much (问价格)

在现在完成时中, 表示时间的词 since, for

since + 时间点/for + 时间段

live, lived, lived 居住

be, was/were, been

for 20 years

I have already lived here for 20 years.

I have lived here since 1976.

I was there last year.

They were in Paris last year.

They have been here for 10 years.

I have been here since 1976.

Ian has lived here for 20 years.

He has been here since 1976.

I want to sell my house.

Do you want to sell your house?

Why do you want to sell your house?

sell, sold, sold

sale n. 卖, 出售

salesman

salesroom [笔误, 应为 sales reps]

for sale 待售

on sale 打折

I want to sell my house.

I sold my house last week.

I have sold my house.

Ian sold his house last week.

Ian has already sold his house.

I believe this house is for sale.

I think they are on sale.

retire, retired, retired

retired adj. 已经退休

retiring adj. 即将退休

retired doctor -> My father is a retired doctor.

retiring doctor -> My father is a retiring doctor.

My father wants to retire next year.

My father retired last year.

My father have already retired.

Ian has already retired, he wants  
to buy a small house in the country.

cost, cost, cost

spend 花费（时间，金钱）

This coat cost 50 yuan.

This coat costs 50 yuan.

This coat doesn't cost 50 yuan.

Does this coat cost 50 yuan?

How much does this coat cost?

How much does this house cost?

worth 指物品的真正价值

be worth

This coat is worth 50 yuan.

every penny of it

It is worth every penny of it.

pinch [pɪntʃ] 捏、撮、掐

penny pincher 小气的人

数字的读法

hundred 百

thousand 千

million 百万

156 one hundred and fifty-six

4,982 four thousand nine hundred and eighty-two

93,792 ninety-three thousand seven hundred and ninety-two

367,853 three hundred and sixty-seven thousand eight hundred and fifty-three

68,509 sixty-eight thousand five hundred and nine

998,965 nine hundred and ninety-eight thousand nine hundred and sixty-five

111,234 one hundred and eleven thousand two hundred and thirty-four

2,998,965 two million nine hundred and ninety-eight thousand nine hundred and sixty-five

[Listen to the tape]

Who wants to buy a house?

Who wants to sell a house?

Mr. A and Mr. B

Mr. A wants to buy a house. He is sure that this house is for sale.

And how long has Mr. B lived here? 20 years.

Since when(which year) has Mr. B been here?

Since 1976.

Why does Mr. B want to sell this house?

He has just retired.

What does he want to do?

He wants to buy a small house in the country.

Does Mr. A like Mr. B's house?

Can he decide now?

No.

Why can't [疑似笔误，漏掉 he] decide yet?

Because his wife must see it first.

How much does this house cost?

£68,500(Six-eight thousand five hundred pounds.)

Does Mr. B want to sell his house?

Women always have the last word. 总是最后妇女说了算。

[课文]

Good afternoon. I believe that this house is for sale.

That's right.

May I have a look at it, please?

Yes, of course. Come in.

How long have you lived here?

I've lived here for twenty years.

Twenty years! That's a long time.

Yes, I've been here since 1976.

Then why do you want to sell it?

Because I've just retired. I want to buy a small house in the country.

How much does this house cost?

£68,500.

That's a lot of money!

It's worth every penny of it.

Well, I like the house, but I can't decide yet. My wife must see it first.

Women always have the last word.

Written Exercises 书面练习 A

He read this book last week.

Q: Did you read this book last week?

N: He didn't read this book last week.

1 The sun set at twenty past seven. set/set/set

2 He ate his lunch at one o'clock. eat/ate/eaten

3 They did their homework last night. do/did/done

4 He came by car this morning. come/came/come

5 The sun rose at half past five. rise/rose/risen

6 We swam across the river yesterday.

The sun has set.

The sun set at 7:20.

Has the sun set?

Did the sun set at 7:20?

When did the sun set?

eat/ate/eaten

He has already eaten his lunch.

He had his lunch at one o'clock.

Have you eaten your lunch?

When did you eat your lunch?

They have already done their homework.

They did their homework last night.

Has she done her homework?

When did he do his homework?

Examples:

Did you read this book last week?

Yes, I read this book last week.

What about Penny?

She hasn't read this book yet.

Did you do your homework last night?

Yes, I did my homework last night.

What about Tom?

He hasn't done his homework yet.

Did Mrs. Jones go to the butcher's this morning?

Yes, she went to the butcher's this morning.

What about Mrs. Williams?

She hasn't gone to the butcher's yet.

Did you speak to him yesterday?

Yes, I spoke to him yesterday.

What about Susan?

She hasn't spoken to him yet.

Did George swim across the river an hour ago?

Yes, he swam across the river an hour ago.

What about Sam?

He hasn't swum across the river yet.

Did Tim take off his shoes a minute ago?

Yes, he took off his shoes a minute ago.

What about Frank?

He hasn't taken off his shoes yet.

## Lesson 91 Poor Ian!

[词汇]

still adv. 还，仍旧

move v. 搬家

miss v. 想念，思念

neighbour n. 邻居

person n. 人

people n. 人们

poor adj. 可怜的

## Lesson 92 When will ...?

一般将来时：表示打算或将来要做的事情

主语 + will/shall + v.

will 用于任何人称

shall 只用于第一人称

will not = won't

shall not = shan't

move 搬家，移动

move to 搬到某地

move in 搬进（强调结果）

move into 搬进（强调过程）

move out 搬出

sold 过去式

Ian sold his house last week.

Ian has already sold his house.

Has Ian moved to his new house yet?

No, he hasn't moved to his new house.

He will move to his new house tomorrow.

the new people

the day after tomorrow

The new people will move into the house the day after tomorrow.

leave

I will leave tomorrow.

Will you leave next week.

miss 想念，思念

I will miss you.

Will you miss me?

I won't miss you.

neighbour 邻居

all the neighbours 所有的邻居

All the neighbours will miss Ian.

Ian is a good neighbour.

Ian was a good neighbour.

Ian has always been a good neighbour.

We will all miss him.

was/been

Lucy is a good wife.

She was a good wife.

She has always been a good wife.

将来时的时间

today	tomorrow	the day after tomorrow
this morning	tomorrow morning	the day after tomorrow in the morning
this afternoon	tomorrow afternoon	the day after tomorrow in the afternoon
this evening	tomorrow evening	the day after tomorrow in the evening
tonight	tomorrow night	the night after next

Exercises

we will = we'll

they will = they'll

he will = he'll

she will = she'll

it will = it'll

I will = I'll

Exercises B:

Example:

It rained yesterday.

Yes, and it will rain tomorrow, too.

rain/ snow/ leave/ get up/ arrive/ finish work/ have a holiday/ drive home

have a haircut/ telephone me/ have a shave/ pack his bags/ sweep the floor

paint this room/ repair my car/ make an appointment

1 Yes, and it will snow tomorrow, too.

2 Yes, and he will get up late tomorrow, too.

5 Yes, and she will drive to London tomorrow, too.

6 Yes, and she will telephone him tomorrow, too.

7 Yes, and he will have a shave tomorrow, too.

8 Yes, and she will sweep the floor tomorrow, too.

将来时

1 be going to .....

2 现在进行时的第三种情况

3 一般现在时（表示移动的动词）

I will leave tomorrow.

I am going to leave tomorrow.

I am leaving tomorrow.

I am about to leave.

I am to leave tomorrow.

一般疑问句：Do you come?

Do you come tomorrow?（也可表示将来）

be to do sth.

be about to do sth.（介词短语）

She is (about) to come/leave/move.

be going to do sth.

be doing

be to do sth.

Lesson 91 Poor Ian!

[词汇·略]

nation -> national -> nationality

person

personal: 个人的 personal belief 个人信仰

personality: 人格，人品

peoples: 不同国家的人民（即：各民族，种族）

Questions:

When did Ian sell his house?

Last week.

Has Ian moved to his new house?

No.

When will he move to his new house?

Tomorrow morning.

Has the new people moved into this house?

No.

When will they move into this house?

The day after tomorrow.

Who will see Ian today?

Jenny.

Is Ian a good neighbour?

Will Ian's neighbour miss him?

Did Ian want to sell his house?

No.

Who wanted to sell his house?

His wife.

Ian

Ian has already sold his house.

He sold his house last week.

He didn't want to leave this house.

But his wife wanted to leave.

Ian will move to his new house tomorrow afternoon.

The new people will move into the house the day after tomorrow.

Ian has always been a good neighbour.

All his neighbours will miss him.

Jenny will see Ian today.

Please give him my regards. 请代我向 he 问好。

give sb. one's regards

Give your mother my regards.

Please give her my regards.

[课文]

Has Ian sold his house yet?

Yes, he has.

He sold it last week.

Has he moved to his new house yet?

No, not yet.

He's still here.

He's going to move tomorrow.

When? Tomorrow morning?

No. Tomorrow afternoon.

I'll miss him.

He has always been a good neighbour.

He's a very nice person.

We'll all miss him.

When will the new people move into this house?

I think that they'll move into the day after tomorrow.

Will you see Ian today, Jenny?

Yes, I will.

Please give him my regards.

Poor Ian!

He didn't want to leave this house.

No, he didn't want to leave, but his wife did.

## Lesson 93 Our new neighbour

[词汇]

pilot n. 飞行员

return v. 返回

New York n. 纽约

Tokyo n. 东京

Madrid n. 马德里

fly (flew, flown) v. 飞行

[P192]

Athens n. 雅典 ['æθinz]

Berlin n. 柏林 [bɜ:'lin]

Bombay n. 孟买 [bɒm'bei]

Geneva n. 日内瓦 [dʒi'ni:və]

Moscow n. 莫斯科 ['mɒskəʊ]

Rome n. 罗马 [rəʊm]

Seoul n. 汉城 [səʊl]

Stockholm n. 斯德哥尔摩 ['stɒk'həʊm]

Sydney n. 悉尼 ['sidni]

[词汇·略]

return ticket 往返车票

return to

return from

I will return to Beijing next week.

They have already returned to Shanghai.

My mother returned to Beijing last week.

My father will return from Hongkong next week.

Nigel has already returned from Bombay.

He returned from Bombay last week.

next-door neighbour 隔壁邻居

the Royal Air Force 英国皇家空军

What is Nigel's job?

How old is Nigel?

Has he ever been to a lot of places in the world?

What about his wife?

Does his wife travel a lot?

What does she usually do?

Where is Nigel now?

When will he return to London?

When will he go to New York?

Where is Madrid?

When did Nigel go to Spain?  
How did he go there?  
Where will he go next week?  
What about next month?  
How will he go there?  
What about the month after next?

[课文]

Nigel is our new **next-door** neighbour.  
He's a pilot.  
He was in the R.A.F.  
He will **fly to** New York next month.  
**The month after next** he'll fly to Tokyo.  
At the moment, he's in Madrid.  
He flew to Spain a week ago.  
He'll **return to** London **the week after next**.  
He's only forty-one years old, and he has already been to **nearly** every country **in the world**.  
Nigel is a very lucky man.  
But his wife isn't very lucky.  
She usually stays at home.

He has already flown to Spain.  
We have already been to nearly every city in China.  
My father has already been to nearly every town in China.

Lesson 94 When did you/will you go to ...?

Written exercises 书面练习A page 192

last week, last month, last year  
this week, this month, this year  
next week, next month, next year  
the week after next, the month after next, the year after next

- 1 He will go to New York next week.
- 2 She will go to Sidney next month.
- 3 I will go to Paris the year after next.
- 4 We will go to Stockholm next year.
- 5 They will go to Geneva the week after next.

Written exercises 书面练习B page 192

- 1 No, she won't return to Geneva next year. She'll return to Bombay.
- 2 No, I won't fly to London tomorrow. I'll fly to Geneva.
- 3 No, we won't go to Madrid next year. We'll go to London.
- 4 No, he won't arrive from Moscow next month. He'll arrive from Madrid.
- 5 No, they won't stay in New York next month. They'll stay in Moscow.

补充材料 page 26

shall, will, shan't, won't

I shall go to Paris tomorrow morning.

He will fly to Rome in two days' time.

Will you visit the palace the day after tomorrow?

No, I shan't visit it. I shall visit a museum.

had better/ 'd better

I had better finish my homework first.

You'd better zip your mouth.

1 has bought, bought, will arrive, have

2 will, arrive (in five hours 五个小时后)

3 have, been

4 will, arrive

5 stays

6 go, don't want

7 is flying

8 have

9 Has, moved

10 will have/had

1 afraid, sure

2 like

3 in

4 lazy, lazily

5 for

6 had a

7 on

8 been

9 on

10 at

[词汇 • 略]

Lesson 95 Tickets, please

[词汇]

return n. 往返

train n. 火车

platform n. 站台

plenty n. 大量

bar n. 酒吧

station n. 车站, 火车站

porter n. 收票员

catch(caught, caught) v. 赶上

miss v. 错过

return to

return from

return tickets

the way to King Street

return tickets to London

single

I'm still single.

Small profits and quick return. 薄利多销。

I want two return tickets to London.

next train

The next train will leave at eight o'clock.

When will the next train leave?

platform 2

leave from

The next train will leave from platform 2.

train [为了某种特定的技能进行培训、集中训练]

exercise [对已经获得的技能进行练习]

drill 操练 [反复操练以获得某种技能]

practice [在基础上进一步熟练]

training center 培训中心

Practice makes perfect. 熟能生巧。

practise v.

I want to practise my oral English.

plenty of [只能用于肯定句]

enough [疑问句]

many [否定句中，修饰可数名词]

much [否定句中，修饰不可数名词]

I have plenty of friends.

I have plenty of time.

We have plenty of time.

have got

We have got plenty of time.

There is a bar next door to the station. Let's go and have a drink.

It's only three minutes to eight.

The next train will leave at a quarter past eight.

We have got plenty of time.

There is a bar next door to the station.

Let's go and have a drink.

You had better go home now.

We had better go back.

police

police station 警察局  
fire station 消防队  
filling station 加油站  
gas station  
power station 电站  
TV station 电视台  
broadcasting station 广播电台  
VOA 美国之音  
Voice of America  
BBC 英国广播电台  
British Broadcasting Corporation

I didn't catch you. [我没听见、没听清。]

catch up with sb. 赶上某人

My English is not as good as yours, but I am trying to study hard to catch up with you.

I want to catch the train.

I want to catch the 8:19.

You have just missed the train.

Who wants to go to London?

When will the next train leave?

How many tickets do they want to buy? Return tickets or single tickets?

Where will the next train leave from?

Which platform will the next train leave?

Where is the platform 2?

What time is it now?

What will George and Ken do?

What do they want to do?

Is there a bar?

Where is the bar?

When will they come back?

What happened?

Why?

When is the next train?

George and Ken want to go to London.

They want to buy two return tickets to London.

The next train will leave at 8:19.

The next train will leave from platform 2.

The Platform Two is over the bridge.

It's only three minutes to eight.

They have got plenty of time.

There is a bar next door to the station.

They want to have a drink there.

They think it's only a quarter past eight.

But the clock in the station is ten minutes slow.

The next train is in 5 hours' time.

[课文]

**Two return tickets to London**, please.

What time will the next train leave?

At nineteen minutes past eight.

Which platform? Platform Two. Over the bridge.

What time will the next train leave? At eight nineteen.

**We've** got plenty of time.

It's only three minutes to eight. Let's go and have a drink.

There's a bar next door to the station.

We **had better** go back to the station now, Ken.

Tickets, please.

We want **to** catch the eight nineteen **to** London.

You've just miss it! What!

It's only eight fifteen.

I'm sorry, sir.

That clock's ten minutes slow.

When's the next train?

In five hours' time!

Let's go and have a drink. -> Let's go to have a drink.

ten minutes slow 慢十分钟 -> ten minutes quick 快十分钟

[词汇 • 略]

Lesson 96 What's the exact time?

Written exercises 书面练习 A page 196

1 I had better stay here.

2 We had better wait for him.

3 You had better call a doctor.

4 They had better go home.

5 She had better hurry.

6 You had better be careful.

Written exercises 书面练习 B page 196

a minute ago, two minutes ago

an hour ago, two hours ago

a day ago, two days ago

a year ago, two years ago

in five minutes, in a minute's time

in an hour's time, in two hours' time

in a day's time, in two days' time

in a week's time, in two weeks' time

in a month's time, in two months' time

in a year's time, in two years' time

1 I'll go to Sydney in a month's time.

2 The next train will leave for Geneva in an hour's time.

3 I'll fly to Beijing in two days' time.

4 We will go to London in an hour's time.

## Lesson 97 A small blue case

[词汇]

leave (left, left) v. 遗留

describe v. 描述

zip n. 拉链

label n. 标签

handle n. 提手，把手

address n. 地址

pence n. penny 的复数形式

belong v. 属于

belong to

补充材料：P19

### I. 语音强化训练（pronunciation）

I have read the book.

Let's have a good chat.

keep on/ stand up/ take off/ above all

look at it/ after all/ here and there/ more or less

Where is it?

### II. 经典口语习语、词组、谚语（phrases/idioms/proverbs）

shake in one's shoes 吓得发抖

birthday suit 生日礼服；一丝不挂

lady-killer （超级）帅哥

wall flower （舞会上）被冷落的女子

bet one's bottom dollar(that/on) 孤注一掷；对……有绝对把握

in the pink 健康

Like father, like son. 有其父必有其子。

Every bean has its black. 人无完人。

In the dictionary of youth there is no such words as failure. 初生牛犊不怕虎。

in one's: 在某人的……

in one's birthday suit: 一丝不挂

补充材料：P18

### II. Fill in the blanks:

1 What do you want, beef or lamb? Lamb, please.

2 Whose coat is this? It's Jim's.

3 When/What time does she have lunch? Twelve o'clock.

4 Who can help Kate? I can.

5 What colour do you like best?

6 What nationality are they?

I Fill the blanks with suitable words:

1 Do you clean your bedroom by yourself? Yes, I do. But now I am not cleaning.

2 She often swims in the river. Look, she is swimming there.

3 Is he watching TV? No, he isn't. But he watches TV every day.

4 Does Li Lei do his homework every night? Of course. What about you?

5 Can you read this book for me? Yes, I can. Let's.

6 In the morning, Mr. Jones goes to work at seven o'clock. At noon, he has his lunch in the dining hall. In the afternoon, he types some files for the boss. At about five o'clock in the afternoon, he can leave his office. Mr. Jones and his wife have supper together every night.

7 It's time to go to school. Some of them go there on foot, some of them by bus, and the others go by bike.

8 In the evening, my mother usually writes her research paper. But tonight she is not writing her paper.

### I. 语音强化训练 (pronunciation)

si(t) down/ nex(t) door/ a ba(d) cold/ ta(k)e to

ba(d) boy/ han(d) bag/ sui(t)case/ blac(k)board

a goo(d) deal/ wi(th) this/ so(m)e more/ Ye(s), sir.

street/ scar/ spend/ school/ stay/ spare/ skate

[弱说与浊化]

补充材料：P17

### II. 经典口语习语、词组、谚语 (phrases/idioms/proverbs)

sit pretty 处于有利的地位

best man 伴郎

cry baby 爱报怨的人

double Dutch 比较难解的问题 (go Dutch: AA制)

show one's true color 露出某人的真面目

Take home in doggy bags. 打包回家 (lucky dog: 幸运儿)

There is no smoke without fire. 无风不起浪

Better late than never. 亡羊补牢，为时未晚。

Pride goes before a fall. 骄兵必败

[词汇·略]

leave/left/left 知道落在什么地方了

lose/lost/lost 不明确丢的地点

the train to London

the other day (一般过去时)

I left a suitcase on the train to London the other day.

Mrs. Mills left her handbag on the train to Moscow yesterday.

I have lost my suitcase.

He lost his pen last week.

Can you describe it?

have/have got

It has got a zip.

It's a small blue case.

There's a label on the handle.

a girl with long hair

a boy with blue eyes

a label with my name and address

There's a label on the handle with my name and address on it.

I went to London last week.

I left a suitcase on the train to London the other day.

Can you describe it?

It's a small blue case.

It's got a zip.

There's a label on the handle with my name and address on it.

address n. 地址；演讲（精心准备过的，正式的）

speech: （最常见的）各种各样的演讲

lecture: （学术性的）演讲

belong to （不能用于进行时态）

This book belongs to me. = This book is mine.

This book doesn't belong to me.

These books belong to me.

These books don't belong to me.

Is this book yours?

A Complete these sentences. (P200)

Example:

This dress belongs to my sister. It is hers.

1 These things belong to my husband. They are his.

2 This coat belongs to me. It is mine.

3 These books belong to my wife. They are hers.

4 These books belong to my brother and me. They are ours.

5 These pens belong to Tom and Jill. They are theirs.

6 This suitcase belongs to you. It is yours.

B Answer these questions.

Example:

Are these your keys?

Yes, they're mine. They belong to me.

Is this John's letter?

Yes, it's his. It belongs to him.

Are these my clothes?

Yes, they're yours. They belong to you.

1 Is this Jane's passport?

Yes, it's hers. It belongs to her.

2 Are these their tickets?

Yes, they're theirs. They belong to them.

3 Is this your watch?

Yes, it's mine. It belong to me.

4 Are these her flowers?

Yes, they're hers. They belong to her.

5 Is this my boat?

Yes, it's yours. It belongs to you.

6 Is this Jim's phrasebook?

Yes, it's his. It belongs to him.

7 Are these hammers Frank's and Gary's?

Yes, they are theirs. They belong to them.

8 Is this our car?

Yes, it's ours. It belongs to us.

9 Are these the children's pens?

Yes, they're theirs. They belong to them.

Does this belong to me?/ Is this mine?

Does this belong to you?/ Is this yours?

Does this belong to him?/ Is this his?

Does this belong to her?/ Is this hers?

Do these belong to us?/ Are these ours?

Do these belong to you?/ Are these yours?

Do these belong to them?/ Are these theirs?

[词汇 • 略]

Who is talking to the attendant?

Who left his suitcase on the train to London?

Can you describe Mr. X's suitcase?

It's a small blue case and it's got a zip.

There's a label on the handle with his name and address on it.

What is his address?

83, Bridge Street.

How much does Mr. X pay?

Three pounds fifty pence, please.

Does this suitcase belong to Mr. X?

No.

What happened?

The attendant has given Mr. X the wrong case.

Who left the suitcase?

Mr. Hall.

What is Mr. Hall's full name?

David Hall.

What is his address.

83, Bridge Street.

Where did Mr.Hall go the other day?

London.

How did he go there?

By train.

Where is he now?

At the train station.

What is he doing?

He is talking to the attendant.

The attendant gave him a suitcase.

But this suitcase doesn't belong to him.

The attendant has already given him the wrong case.

[课文]

I **left** a suitcase on **the train to London the other day**.

Can you describe it, sir?

It's a small blue case and it's **got a zip**.

There's a label on the handle with my name and address on it.

Is this case yours?

No, that's not mine.

What about this one?

This one's got a label.

**Let me see it.**

What's your name and address?

David Hall, 83, Bridge Street.

That's right.

D.N.Hall, 83, Bridge Street.

Three pounds fifty pence, please.

Here you are.

Thank you.

Hey!

What's the matter?

This case doesn't **belong to me!**

You've given me the wrong case!

[词汇 • 略]

Lesson 99 Ow!

[词汇]

ow int. 哎哟

slip (slipped, slipped) v. 滑到, 滑了一脚

fall (fell, fallen) v. 落下, 跌倒; n. 秋天

downstairs adv. 下楼 (upstairs 上楼)

hurt (hurt, hurt) v. 伤, 伤害, 疼痛

back n. 背

stand up 起立, 站起来

help v. 帮助

at once 立即

sure adj. 一定的，确信的

X-ray n. X光透视

I slipped yesterday.

I fell downstairs yesterday.

Andy slipped and fell downstairs this morning.

宾语从句：一个句子做宾语。

名词或代词做宾语，一般跟在动词或介词后面。

表示人的情感、心情：afraid, sure, sorry, glad

普通的动词：think, believe, hope, say

（前面是一般现在时，后面从句中可以用任何时态）

I am sure that I have hurt my back.

Andy is sure that he has hurt his back.

I'm afraid that you must see a doctor.

I'm sorry that you slipped yesterday.

I think you had better call a doctor.

I believe that you have hurt your back.

I hope that you can come tomorrow.

Andy says that he has hurt his back.

backbite: 在背后说坏话，背后伤人

backbiter: 背后诽谤者

ask for help: 求救

call for help: 求救

seek help: 求救

I seek you. 我在寻找你。

mutual help: 互相帮助

offer help to sb. 给某人提供帮助

provide help to sb. 给某人提供（免费的）帮助

help sb. (to) do sth. 帮某人做某事

宾语从句：一个句子做宾语

名词或者代词做宾语：一般跟在动词或介词后面

表示人的情感、心情：afraid, sorry, sure, glad

普通的动词：know, understand, think, believe, hope, say

I have just arrived in Beijing.

He says he has just arrived in Beijing.

He says, "I hope you are all well."

He says he hopes we are all well.

He says, "I will return to London tomorrow."

He says He will return to London tomorrow.

He says, "I am staying at a hotel."

He says he is staying at a hotel.

He is a member of the club.

You know he is a member of the club.

I'm sure you need an X-ray.

I'm afraid I can't stand up.

I'm glad you went there yesterday.

Questions:

What happened to Andy this morning?

He slipped and fell downstairs.

What does Andy think about this?

He thinks he has hurt his back.

Who is the doctor?

Mr.Carter.

Does Andy think that he can get up?

No, Andy thinks he can't get up.

Will the doctor come? Is the doctor going to come?

Yes.

What does Lucy think about this?

Lucy think that Andy needs an X-ray.

Andy slipped and fell downstairs this morning.

He thinks that he has hurt his back.

Andy is afraid that he can't get up.

Lucy says that she will call Dr.Carter.

The doctor says that he will come at once.

Lucy thinks that Andy needs an X-ray.

[词汇 • 略]

[课文]

Ow!

**What's the matter**, Andy?

I **slipped** and **fell downstairs**.

Have you hurt yourself?

Yes, I have.

I think that I've hurt my back.

Try **and** stand up.

Can you stand up?

Here.

Let me help you.

I'm sorry, Lucy.

I'm afraid that I can't get up.

I think that the doctor **had better** see you.

I'll phone Dr.Carter.

The doctor says that he will come at once.

I'm sure that you need an X-ray, Andy.

He thinks that he has hurt his back.

My mother thinks that she has hurt her back.

He is afraid that he can't get up.

They are afraid that they can't get up.

bad better + do

bad better + not + do

## Lesson 101 A card from Jimmy

[词汇]

Scotland ['skɒtlənd] n. 苏格兰（英国）

card n. 明信片

youth [ju:θ] n. 青年

hostel ['hɒstəl] n. 招待所，旅馆（简易的）

association [ə,səʊsi'eɪʃən] n. 协会

soon adv. 不久

write(wrote, written) v. 写

name card: 名片（不正规）

business card: 名片

birthday card: 生日贺卡

membership card: 会员卡

postcard: 明信片

a youth of twenty

youth club

youth center

hotel: 宾馆

inn: （尤指乡村或公路边的）旅馆，客栈

motel: 汽车旅馆

tavern: 小酒店；客栈 ['tævə(:)n]

write to sb./write sb. a letter/write a letter to sb.

write down: 记下

hear from: 收到某人来信

I write to my mother every month.

I wrote a letter to my husband last week.

I have written a letter to my boss.

Andy has written a letter to Lucy.

I hear from my mother every day.

They have heard from the boss.

The boss has heard from his wife.

He heard from his wife yesterday.

课文注释：

1 'I have just arrived in Scotland ...a Youth Hostel.'

直接引语

2 the Y.H.A.=the Youth Hostels Association: 青年招待所协会“青招协”

a member of the Y.H.A.

3 speak up: 大声地说

4 Love, Jimmy: 爱你的吉米

反意疑问句：

首先，明白语法的含义。

询问某种情况是否真实，或者别人是否同意自己。

分为两部分：

逗号前面为主句；后面为反意疑问句。

当前面是肯定句时，后面是否定句。

当前面是否定句时，后面是肯定句。

特点：

- 1 问句的主语与主句的主语一致；
- 2 前后的助动词一致；
- 3 前后的时态一致。

Sally can speak French, can't she?

Sally can't speak French, can she?

升调 - 表示疑问，期待对方回答。

降调 - 语气确定，不需要回答。

You are a student, aren't you?

It's a fine day, isn't it?

You went to the party yesterday, didn't you?

You have finished your homework, haven't you?

You like music, don't you?

Your father doesn't like music, does he?

He isn't a good man, is he?

He doesn't say very much, does he?

[词汇·略]

What is Penny doing?

She is reading a card.

For whom?

For grandmother.

Whose card.

Jimmy's card.

Where is Jimmy now?

Scotland.

Has Jimmy stayed in Scotland/been there for a long time?

He has just arrived in Scotland.

Where is he staying now?

At a Youth Hostel.

Why can he stay at a Youth Hostel?

Because he's a member of the Y.H.A.

Will Jimmy write a letter soon?

He says he will.

What does Jimmy hope?

Jimmy hopes that they are all well.  
Why does grandmother ask Penny to speak up?  
Because she is afraid she can't hear very well.  
Jimmy wrote a lot on the card, didn't he?  
No, he didn't.  
Is grandmother very happy about this?  
No, she is not very happy.

Jimmy is the only child in the family.  
The grandmother loves him very much.  
Jimmy went to Scotland last week.  
Grandmother got a card from Jimmy today.  
Jimmy's mother is reading the card for grandmother.  
He says he's just arrived in Scotland.  
He says he is staying at a Youth Hostel.  
Jimmy is a member of the Y.H.A.  
(I know Jimmy is a member of the Y.H.A.)  
He says that he'll write a letter soon.  
He hopes we are all well.  
The grandmother is asking Penny to speak up.  
Because she is afraid she can't hear.  
Jimmy doesn't write very much on the card.  
(He can't write very much on a card.)  
The grandma is not very happy.

[课文]

Read Jimmy's card to me please, Penny. 祈使句  
'I have just arrived in Scotland and I'm staying at a Youth Hostel.' 直接引语  
Eh?  
He says he's just arrived in Scotland. 间接引语  
He says he's stay at a Youth Hostel.  
You know he's a member of the Y.H.A.  
The what?  
The Y.H.A.,Mum.  
The Youth Hostels Association.  
What else does he say?  
'I'll write a letter soon. I hope you are all well.'  
What?  
Speak up, Penny.  
I'm afraid I can't hear you.  
He says he'll write a letter soon.  
He hopes we are all well.  
'Love, Jimmy.'  
Is that all?  
He doesn't say very much, does he?  
He can't write very much on a card, Mum.

[词汇 • 略]

Lesson 102 He says he ... She says she ... They say they ... P208

A Rewrite these sentences.

Example:

He is drinking his milk.

He says he has drunk his milk.

shut - shut/ put - put/ read - read/ speak - spoken/ rise - risen

1 She is shutting the door.

She says she has shut the door.

2 He is putting on his coat.

He says he has put on his coat.

3 He is reading this magazine.

He says he has read this magazine.

4 They are speaking to the boss.

They say they have spoken to the boss.

5 The sun is rising.

They say the sun has risen.

B. Look at this table.

He says he	has got	cold
	feels	a bus
	will sell	a haircut
	needs	tired
	must wait for	a cold
		thirsty
		an X-ray
		an earache
		his house
		ill

He says he has got a cold.

He says he feels cold/tired/thirsty/ill.

He says he will sell a bus/his house.

He says he needs a bus/a haircut/an X-ray/his house.

He says he must wait for a bus/an X-ray.

补充材料 P27

I 语法 (GRAMMER)

my/your/her/his/its/our/your/their

mine/yours/hers/his/its/ours/yours/their

myself/yourself/herself/himself/itself

ourselves/yourselves/themselves

That book belongs to me. It's my book. It's mine. I bought it myself last week.

Her pen belongs to her. It's hers.

Come to my birthday party and enjoy yourselves.

This morning, my father shaved himself and cut himself.

Luckily, they didn't hurt themselves in the traffic accident.

## II 经典口语习语、词组、谚语（phrases/idioms/proverbs）

as like as two peas (beans) 一模一样

cat nap 猫打盹 have a nap: 打盹, 小憩

carry out/fast food 外卖食品

in a jam 在果酱里; 陷入困境

in hot water 处于困境里

wet blanket 扫兴的人, 败兴的事

raise the roof 吵翻了天

Pain past is pleasure. 苦尽甘来

## 补充材料 P29

### I. 语法（grammar）

He says: "I'm a typist." -> He says he is a typist.

They say: "We are playing football." -> They say they are playing football.

She says to me: "You need a haircut." -> She says that I need a haircut.

My teacher says: "I can sing and dance." -> My teacher says he can sing and dance.

He says: "I went to the butcher's." -> He says he went to the butcher's.

I tell him to bring that book here. -> I tell him not to bring that book here.

### II. 精编测试题（EXERCISES）

change the direct speech into indirect speech:

1 I will fly to Beijing. (the old man says)

The old man says he will fly to Beijing.

2 My son is doing his homework. (Mrs. Jones says)

Mrs. Jones says her son is doing his homework.

3 He can paint the room pink. (Jane says)

Jane says he can paint the room pink.

4 She wanted to swim across the river. (they say)

They say she wanted to swim across the river.

5 I am afraid I have got only little money. (He says)

He says he is afraid he has got only little money.

6 We have read these books. (they say)

They say they have read these books.

Change the indirect speech into direct speech:

1 My friend says she likes coffee.

My friend says: "I like coffee."

2 Mr. Bird says he missed [疑为笔误, misses可能更为合适] his daughter very much.

Mr.Bird says:"I miss my daughter very much."

3 They say they need a good rest.

They say:"We need a good rest."

4 I say you can wait for the bus at the bus stop.

I say:"You can wait for the but at the bus stop."

5 He says he feels tired and thirsty.

He says:"I feel tired and thirsty."

6 She says she was glad to help you.

She says:"I was glad to help you."

7 He says he doesn't think he can finish the job by himself.

He says:"I don't think I can finish the job my myself."

补充材料 P28

II 经典口语习语、词组、谚语（phrases/idioms/proverbs）

be on cloud nine 非常高兴

hit the ceiling 气得暴跳如雷

hot seat 坐不住；陷入困境

More haste, less speed. 欲速则不达 [heist]

Money makes the mare go. 有钱能使鬼推磨

Let bygones be bygones. 过去的就让它过去吧。

Love makes the world go around. 爱能使世界转动。

### Lesson 103 The French test

[词汇]

exam n. 考试

pass v. 及格，通过

mathematics [ˌmæθiˈmætiks] n. (maths是缩写) 数学 [mæθs]

question [ˈkwɛstʃən] n. (具体的某一个) 问题

easy adj. 容易的

enough adv. 足够的

paper n. 考卷

fail v. 未及格，失败

answer v. 问答

mark n. 分数

rest n. 其他的东西

difficult adj. 困难的

hate v. 讨厌

low adj. 低的

cheer v. 振作，振奋

guy n. 家伙，人

top n. 上方，顶部

fail to do sth.

hate to do sth.

hate doing sth.

cheer up

### Lesson 104 Too, very, enough

[词汇]

clever adj. 聪明的

stupid adj. 笨的

cheap adj. 便宜的

expensive adj. 贵的

fresh adj. 新鲜的

stale adj. 变馊的

low adj. 低的，矮的

loud adj. 大声的

high adj. 高的

hard adj. 硬的

sweet adj. 甜的

soft adj. 软的

sour adj. 酸的 [ˈsauə]

### Lesson 103 The French test

[词汇·略]

exam/examination（综合性的）考试

test（单项技能的）考试

quiz（临时性的）小测验

midterm exam 期中考试

final exam 期末考试

sham exam 模拟考试

entrance examination 入学考试

driving test 驾照考试

... pass: ……关口

pass the exam

pass in + 具体的某一科

passed

I think I passed the exam.

She thinks she passed in English.

problem:（抽象）

issue 国际争端，分歧

question v. 审讯，质问

thief

The policeman is questioning the thief

We questioned him yesterday.

have a problem

What's your problem?

We have this problem every year.

We are going to have a holiday. But we have a problem every year. Who is going to look after the dog/the house/the garden.

We have this problem every year. At last we stay at home. We look after everything.

enough: (adj.)(adv.)

I have enough time/time enough.

副词：时间、地点、方式、程度、频率

so good/very good

good enough

difficult enough

easy enough

It（形式主语）is ...（真正的主语是动词不定式）

It is easy enough for me to answer this question.

This question is easy enough for me to answer.

It is low enough for me to climb the wall.

The wall is low enough for me to climb.

get married

It is old enough for the girl to get married.

She is old enough to get married.

too ... to

The wall is too high for me to climb.

It is too high for me to climb the wall.

#### Lesson 104 Too, very, enough

A Complete these sentences using too, very or enough.

1 I couldn't speak to the boss. He was very busy.

2 I couldn't go out. It was too cold for me to go out.

3 I could answer all the questions. They were very easy.

4 Is that suitcase light enough for you to carry?

5 Is your brother old enough to be a member of our association?

6 They couldn't see that film. They were too young.

[词汇 • 略]

B Answer these questions.

Examples:

Could he answer all the question? (Yes/easy)

Yes, he could. They were easy enough for him to answer.

Could he answer all the question? (No/difficult)

No, he couldn't. They were too difficult for him to answer.

1 Could he buy the car? (Yes/cheap)

Yes, he could. The car was cheap enough for him to buy.

2 Could he buy the car? (No/expensive)

No, he couldn't. The car was too expensive for him to buy.

3 Could they eat the cakes? (Yes/fresh)

Yes, they could. The cakes were fresh enough for them to eat.

4 Could they eat the cakes? (No/stale)

No, they couldn't. The cakes were too stale for them to eat.

5 Could they hear the stereo? (Yes/loud)

Yes, they could. The stereo was loud enough for them to hear.

6 Could they hear the stereo? (No/low)

No, they couldn't. The stereo was too low for them to hear.

7 Could he climb the wall? (Yes/low)

Yes, he could. The wall was low enough for him to climb.

8 Could he climb the wall? (No/high)

No, he couldn't. The wall was too high for him to climb.

9 Could she eat the pear? (Yes/soft)

Yes, the pear was soft enough for her to eat.

10 Could she eat the pear? (No/hard)

No, she couldn't. The pear was too hard for her to eat.

11 Could she eat the orange? (Yes/sweet)

Yes, she could. The orange was sweet enough for her to eat.

12 Could she eat the orange? (No/sour)

No, she couldn't. The orange was too sour for her to eat.

I could answer the questions.

They were very easy.

I couldn't answer the questions.

They were too difficult.

The questions were easy enough for me to answer.

The questions were too difficult for me to answer.

### Lesson 103 The French test

[词汇·略]

paper n. 考卷（可数）；纸张（不可数）；论文

feel: 感觉[fi:l]/felt/felt

fail: 失败[feil]/failed/failed

fell: 伐木[fel]/felled/felled

fall: 衰落[fɔ:l]/fell/fallen

failure: 失败

Failure is the mother of success.

fail to do sth. 不能够做……

I failed to help him/her yesterday.

fail + 科目: ……考试失败了

I failed the French test last week.

answer v. （一般性的）回答

reply: （正式的书面用语）回答

have a (good) rest

the rest: 其余的东西

There are fifty students in the class. There are twenty girls. The rest are all boys.

can (could: 过去式, 更委婉的语气)

I could answer sixteen questions.

The rest were too difficult for me to answer.

The rest were easy enough for me to answer.

I hate you/French test.

hate to do sth. （一次性的）

hate doing sth. （经常性的）

I hate to dance with you today.

I hate dancing with you.

speak out: 大声讲

cheer up: 振作起来

介词短语做后置定语:

the bottle on the table

the train to London

the guy next to me

at the top of ... : 在……顶部

at the top of the paper

write -> wrote

sit -> sat

look -> looked (~at)

the guy next to me

I think I failed the French test.

Perhaps, I did/didn't it badly.

We didn't do it too badly.

The guy next to me wrote his name at the top of the paper. Then he sat there and looked at the paper for three hours. He didn't write a word.

Questions:

Richard, Gary

I think I passed in English and Mathematics.

Richard thinks he passed in English and Mathematics.

The question was very easy.

The questions was very easy.

What/How about you, Gary?

The English paper wasn't easy enough for me.

The English and Mathematics papers weren't easy enough for me.

I hope I have passed./I hope I haven't failed.

I think I failed the French paper/test.

some of them/some of the children/some of the questions.

I could answer sixteen of the questions.

They were very easy.

I/Gary couldn't answer the rest.

They were too difficult for me.

The questions is too difficult for Gary to answer.

It is too difficult for Gary to answer this question.

The French tests are awful, aren't they?

I hate them.

I'm sure I've got a low mark.

Cheer up!

Perhaps we didn't do too badly.

The guy next to me wrote his name at the top of the paper.

Then he sat there and looked at the paper for three hours!

He didn't write a word.

[课文]

How was the exam, Richard?

Not too bad.

I think I **passed in** English and Mathematics.

The questions were **very** easy.

How about you, Gary?

The English and Maths papers weren't easy **enough** for me.

I hope I haven't failed.

I think I failed the French paper.

I could answer **sixteen of the questions**.

They were very easy.

But I couldn't answer **the rest**.

They were too difficult for me (**to answer**).

French tests are awful, aren't they?

I **hate** them.

I'm sure I've got a low mark.

Oh, **cheer up!**

Perhaps we didn't do too badly.

**The guy next to me** wrote his name **at the top of** the paper.

Yes?

Then he **sat** there and **looked at it for** three hours!

He didn't write a word!

[词汇·略]

## Lesson 105 Full of mistakes

[拼写]

spell v. 拼写 (spelt, spelt)

intelligent adj. 聪明的，有智慧的

mistake n. 错误

present n. 礼物

dictionary n. 词典

mistake 比较一般的错误

blunder 由于粗心大意犯的比较严重的错误

error 没有按照既定的程序、规定犯的错误

fault 侧重于人的错误、过失

make a mistake

I often make a mistake in the exam.

make some mistakes

She always makes some mistakes in the homework.

I made a mistake last week.

I have made a lot of mistakes.

It's my fault.

be full of

This room is full of students.

This letter is full of mistakes.

at present 目前

present n. (小) 礼物

gift 礼物 (比较贵重)

humble present 区区薄礼

重点语法：动词不定式

结构：to + 动词原形，to是个小品词，可以做宾语，宾语补足语

I want to go home.

I want you to go home.

The boss wants Pamela to type a letter.

I want you to type the letter again, because this letter is full of mistakes.

I typed a letter yesterday.

The boss asked Pamela to type a letter last week.

Pamela has typed the letter.

Pamela typed the letter last night.

Pamela is typing the letter.

Pamela will type the letter tomorrow.

Pamela types ten letters every week.

sorry

be sorry about 为此很抱歉

I am sorry about this.

Who typed the letter for the boss? Sandra  
Who is the office assistant? Bob  
Why did the boss ask Sandra to type the letter?  
Because this letter is full of mistakes.  
What's wrong with the word 'intelligent'?  
I have typed the letter.  
I have typed this word 'intelligent' with only one 'l'.  
You have typed the word with only one 'l'.  
What did the boss give Sandra? A dictionary.  
What does the boss want?  
He hopes that the dictionary will help Sandra.

Sandra  
Bob  
The boss is in his office.  
Bob is the office assistant.  
typist 打字员  
Sandra is a typist.  
The boss wants Sandra to come to his office.  
The boss asked Sandra to type a letter for him yesterday.  
Sandra typed the letter last night.  
But she typed the word 'intelligent' with only one 'l'.  
This letter is full of mistakes.  
angry 生气  
a little bit  
The boss is a little bit angry.  
bookstore  
bookshop  
The boss went to the bookshop this morning.  
He bought a dictionary for Sandra.  
He hopes it will help Sandra.  
The boss wants Sandra to type the letter again.  
Sandra says she will type the letter soon.  
when  
When Sandra knows that the boss bought a present for her, she is very happy.

[课文]

Where's Sandra, Bob?  
**I want her.**  
Do you want **to** speak **to** her?  
Yes, I do.  
I want her to come to my office.  
Tell her to come at once.  
Did you want to see me?  
Ah, yes, Sandra.

How do you spell 'intelligent'?

Can you tell me?

INTELLIGENT.

That's right.

You've typed it with only one 'I'.

This letter's **full of mistakes**.

I want you to type it again.

Yes, I'll do that.

I'm sorry about that.

And here's a little present for you.

What is it?

It's a dictionary.

I hope it'll help you.

to 在名词，代词，动词的ing形式之前是介词。

to 的后面是动词原形，就是不定式。

to answer the question

to finish the work

[词汇 • 略]

Lesson 106 I want you/him/them to

[词汇]

carry v. 携带

correct v. 改正，纠正

keep v. 保存，保留

Written exercises 书面练习 A page 216

Please repair it. I want you to repair it.

1 I want you to spell it.

2 I want you to telephone him.

3 I want you to wear it.

4 I want you to ask her

5 I want you to tell them.

6 I want you to help us.

Written exercises 书面练习 B page 216

Type it again!

What do you want me to do? I want you to type it again.

1 What do you want me to do? I want you to carry it.

2 Correct it!

3 Listen to it!

4 Describe it!

5 Move it!

6 Try it!

7 Finish it!

8 Keep it!

What does your father want me to do?

He wants you to try it.

What does Mr.Liu want Lucy to do?

He wants her to correct it.

What does the boss want Sandra to do?

He wants her to finish it.

What do you want me to do?

I want you to keep it.

attendant 接待员

What does the attendant want Mr.Wood to do?

He wants him to describe it.

Written exercises 书面练习 C page 216

Don't type it again! (He/her)

He is telling her not to type it again.

He doesn't want her to type it again.

1 Don't hurt yourself! (she/him)

She is telling him not to hurt himself.

She doesn't want him to hurt himself.

2 Don't slip. (she/him)

She is telling him not to slip.

She doesn't want him to slip.

3 Don't fall! (she/him)

She is telling him not to fall.

She doesn't want him to fall.

4 Don't miss it! (she/them)

She is telling them not to miss it.

She doesn't want them to miss it.

5 Don't break it! (she/him)

My mother is telling my brother not to break it.

My mother doesn't want my brother to break it.

6 Don't drive it! (he/her)

Don't drive it so quickly!

Mr.Baker is telling his daughter not to drive so quickly.

Mr.Baker doesn't want his daughter to drive so quickly.

Written exercises 书面练习 D page 216

Why is he speaking to her?

Because he doesn't want her to type it again.

1 Why is she speaking to him? (hurt himself)

Because she doesn't want him to hurt himself.

2 Why is she speaking to him? (slip)

Because she doesn't want him to slip.

3 Why is she speaking to him? (fall)

Because she doesn't want him to fall.

4 Why is she speaking to them? (miss it)

Because she doesn't want them to miss it.

5 Why is she speaking to him? (break it)

Because she doesn't want him to break it.

6 Why is he speaking to her? (drive it)

Because he doesn't want her to drive it.

Lesson 107 It's so small.

[词汇]

madam n. 夫人，女士

smart adj. 漂亮的

as well 同样

suit v. 适于

pretty adj. 漂亮的

语法：形容词的比较级和最高级

tall

long

John is tall.

Tim is taller than him.

than

Tim taller than John is.

Steven is the tallest student in the class.

Steven is the tallest student I have ever seen.

ever

longer, longest

The red pencil is long.

The green pencil is longer than the red pencil.

pencil box

The yellow pencil is the longest in the pencil box.

Lesson 108 How do they compare?

Written exercise 书面练习 A page 220

cold -> colder -> coldest

nice -> nicer -> nicest

hot -> hotter -> hottest

heavy -> heavier -> heaviest

It is warm today, but it was warmer yesterday.

1 cooler

2 wetter

3 later

4 easier

5 larger

Written exercise 书面练习 B page 220

I am very young.

I am younger than you are.

I am the youngest in the class.

1 I am very old.

I am older than you are.

I am the oldest in the class.

2 I am very tall.

I am taller than you are.

I am the tallest in the class.

3 I am very lazy.

I am lazier than you are.

I am the laziest in the class.

4 I am very heavy.

I am heavier than you are.

I am the heaviest in the class.

Mr.Smith

Mrs.Smith

Mr.Smith is fat.

Mrs.Smith is fatter than Mr.Smith.

Their sun is the fattest in the family.

lucky -> luckier -> luckiest

Andy is lucky.

I am luckier than Andy.

Lucy is the luckiest person here.

This policeman is tall.

But that policeman is taller.

He is the tallest policeman I have ever seen.

1 This street is clean.

But that street is cleaner.

This is the cleanest street I have ever seen.

2 This man is old.

old -> older -> oldest

But that man is older.

He is the oldest man I have ever seen.

3 long -> longer -> longest

This river is long.

But that river is longer than this one.

This is the longest river I have ever seen.

4 This woman is short.

That woman is shorter.

She is the shortest woman in the YHA.

5 blunt -> blunter -> bluntest

This knife is blunt.

That knife is blunter than this one.

This is the bluntest knife I have ever seen.

Lesson 107 It's too small.

than

规则：……

tall

Sophia is tall.

Paul is taller than Sophia.

Hans is the tallest student in our class.

It is hot today.

It was hotter yesterday.

the day before yesterday.

The day before yesterday was the hottest day in the year/this year.

last year

crowd

at the race 在赛场

in the race 比赛中

There was a large crowd at the race last year.

This year the crowd is larger.

It is the largest crowd I have ever seen.

The brown suitcase is heavy.

The blue suitcase is heavier than the brown one.

the heaviest of them all.

The green suitcase is the heaviest of them all.

[词汇·略]

as well 用于口语中，不用于否定句

You can do it.

I can do it as well.

He understands French.

She understands French as well.

too 也，太

either

also

as well

I like France too.

Are you French too?

I don't like chicken either.

I also like French.

suit v. 适于 n. 套服

This coat suits me.

This coat doesn't suit me.

Does this coat suit me?

at all

I don't like you.

I don't like you at all.

This coat doesn't suit me at all.

This dress doesn't suit my mother at all.

prettier -> prettiest

Where is the lady? In a shop.

What does she want to do? She wants to buy a dress.

What color does she like?

What color is the first dress? blue

How many dresses did the shop assistant give the lady?

What color is the first one?

What about the second one?

Which one is the short skirt?

Are short skirts in fashion now?

Why doesn't the lady like the dress?

The lady is very thin.

Can the shop assistant give a dress to the lady?

But the lady doesn't like any of the dresses here.

What color is the short skirt? Green.

Does the lady like green? She like blue.

A lady is in a shop.

She wants to buy a dress.

give -> gave -> given

The shop assistant gave her a blue dress.

But the lady doesn't like it.

She likes the color.

But she thinks the dress is too small for her.

The shop assistant gave her another lovely dress.

It's very smart.

And short skirts are in fashion now.

would like to do sth.

I would like to have a glass of beer.

Would you like to come?

Would you like to type a letter for me?

Would you like to try it?

All right.

I'm afraid that the green dress is too small for me as well.

I am afraid that my father won't like you either.

The green dress is smaller than the blue one.

I don't like the color either.

It doesn't suit me at all.

They don't suit me at all.

I think the blue dress is prettier.

show

Could you show me another dress.

I want a dress like that one.

But it must be my size.

It is my size.

It can be my size.

It is the largest dress in the shop.

[课文]

Do you like this dress, madam?

I like the colour very much.

It's a lovely dress, but it's too small for me.

What about this one?

It's a lovely dress.

It's very smart.

Short skirts **are in fashion** now.

**Would you like to** try it? All right.

I'm afraid this green dress is too small for me as well.

It's smaller than the blue one.

I don't like the colour either.

It doesn't suit me at all.

I think the blue dress is prettier.

Could you show me another blue dress?

I want a dress like that one, but it must be my size.

I'm afraid I haven't got a larger dress. This is the largest dress in the shop.

Could you tell me the way to the post office?

## Lesson 109 A good idea

[词汇]

idea n. 主意

a little 少许

teaspoonful n. 一满茶匙的

less adj. 较少的，更少的

a few 几个

pity n. 遗憾

instead adv. 代替

advice n. 建议，忠告

idea 含义较广

opinion 对某事具体的看法

thought 成系统的思想

view 侧重个人意见

a good idea

in one's opinion

in my opinion

in his opinion

viewpoint 观察视点

I have a good idea.

a little 修饰不可数名词，表示肯定含义

little 修饰不可数名词，表示否定含义

a few 修饰可数名词，表示肯定含义

few 修饰可数名词，表示否定含义

I have a little milk.

I have little milk.

She has a few friends.

She has few friends.

good,well -> better -> best

bad,ill -> worse -> worst

old -> older -> oldest 老，年龄大

-> elder -> eldest 排行比较

far -> farther -> farthest 指距离

-> further -> furthest 表示程度

many,much -> more -> most

little -> less -> least

elder sister 姐姐

further study 进修学习

further explanation 进一步的解释

She is a beautiful girl.

How beautiful she is!

How beautiful the girl is!  
What a beautiful girl she is!  
What a beautiful girl!  
It is a pity.  
What a pity it is!  
What a pity!

instead of  
She didn't go there yesterday.  
I went there instead.  
There is no coffee.  
Let's drink a cup of tea instead.  
Let's watch TV instead of playing cards.  
I went there instead of her.  
drink -> drank -> drunk  
I drank a cup of coffee instead of tea.

advice n. 建议，忠告（不可数名词）  
advise v.  
a piece of advice 一条建议  
take one's advice 听从某人的建议  
follow one's advice  
had better do sth.  
You'd better take my advice next time.  
advise sb. to do sth.

Lesson 110 How do they compare?

[词汇]

most adj. 最多的（many, much的最高级）  
least adj. 最小的，最少的（little的最高级）  
best adj. 最好的（good的最高级）  
worse adj. 更坏的（bad的比较级）  
worst adj. 最坏的（bad的最高级）

Written exercises 书面练习 A page 224

much 修饰不可数名词  
many 修饰可数名词  
less 修饰不可数名词  
fewer 修饰可数名词

1 many  
2 less  
3 much  
4 fewer

Written exercises 书面练习 A page 224

Have you got any coffee?

I haven't got much coffee. I've got very little.

Have you got any biscuits?

I haven't got many biscuits. I've got very few.

1 Have you got any jam?

I haven't got much jam. I've got very little.

2 Have you got any potatoes?

I haven't got many potatoes. I've got very few.

3 Have you got any oranges?

I haven't got many oranges. I've got very few.

4 Have you got any vegetables?

I haven't got many vegetables. I've got very few.

5 Have you got any meat?

I haven't got much meat. I've got very little.

6 Have you got any money?

I haven't got much money. I've got very little.

Written exercises 书面练习 C page 224

I've got some coffee.

I've got more coffee than you have.

1 I've got some soap. I've got more soap than you have.

2 I've got some fruit. I've got more fruit than you have.

3 I've got some books. I've got more books than you have.

4 I've got some presents. I've got more presents than you have.

5 I've got some eggs. I've got more eggs than you have.

6 I've got some stationery. I've got more stationery than you have.

Written exercises 书面练习 D page 224

I've got some coffee.

I've got less coffee than you have. I've got the least.

I've got some biscuits.

I've got fewer biscuits than you have. I've got the fewest.

1 I've got some jam.

I've got less jam than you have. I've got the least.

2 I've got some potatoes.

I've got fewer potatoes than you have. I've got the fewest.

4 I've got some oranges.

I've got fewer oranges than you have. I've got the fewest.

5 I've got some meat.

I've got less meat than you have. I've got the least.

6 I've got some money.

I've got less money than you have. I've got the least.

Have you got any chocolate?

I haven't got much.

I've got more than you have.

I've got the most.

Have you got any chocolate?

I've got very little.

I've got less than you have.

I've got the least.

Have you made any mistakes?

I haven't made many.

I've made more than you have.

I've made the most.

Have you made any mistakes?

I've made very few.

I've made fewer than you have.

I've made the fewest.

You must see my new car.

It's very good.

This one's better.

This one's the best I've ever seen.

You mustn't go to that restaurant.

It's very bad.

This one's worse.

This one's the worst I've ever seen.

Lesson 109 A good idea

[词汇 • 略]

Charlotte

Jane

Charlotte wants to make some coffee for Jane.

Charlotte is making some coffee for Jane.

Charlotte has made some coffee for Jane.

Charlotte made some coffee for Jane yesterday.

Charlotte will make some coffee for Jane.

I will make some coffee for you.

I shall make some coffee for you.

Shall I make some coffee, Jane?

That's a good idea.

prepare v. 准备

ready adj.

The dinner is ready.  
The coffee is ready.  
Are you ready?  
I want some milk.  
I don't want any milk.  
Do you want any milk?  
Does Jane want any milk?  
Just a little.  
Jane wants just a little milk in her coffee.  
What about you?  
What about some sugar?  
Two teaspoonfuls.  
Less than that.  
One and a half teaspoonfuls.  
That's enough for me.  
The coffee is very nice.  
It was very nice.  
That was very nice.  
Would you like sth.?  
Would you like to do sth.?  
I would like some milk.  
Would you like some milk?  
I would like to go to Shanghai tomorrow.  
I would like to play football with you.  
Would you like to play football with us?  
Would you like to drink a cup of coffee?  
Yes, please.  
I would like a cigarette.  
Jane would like a cigarette.  
May I have one?  
Of course./ Certainly.  
I think there are a few in that box.  
I am afraid It's empty.  
What a pity!  
Have a biscuit instead.  
That's very good advice!  
It doesn't matter.  
Eat more and smoke less!

[课文]

**Shall I make some coffee**, Jane?  
That's a good idea, Charlotte.  
It's ready.  
Do you want any milk?  
Just a little, please.  
**What about some sugar?** Two teaspoonfuls?

No, less than that.

One and a half teaspoonfuls, please.

That's enough for me.

That was very nice.

**Would you like some more?**

Yes, please.

**I'd like** a cigarette, too.

May I have one?

Of course.

I think there are a few in that box.

I'm afraid it's empty.

What a pity!

It doesn't **matter**.

Have a biscuit instead.

Eat more and smoke less.

That's very good advice!

I'd like = I would like

It matters.

Does it matter?

Would you like some more?

## Lesson 111 The most expensive model

[词汇]

model n. 型号，式样

afford v. 付得起

deposit n. 预付定金

instalment n. 分期付款

price n. 价格

millionaire n. 百万富翁

语法：

interesting, expensive, difficult, beautiful

more, the most

less, the least

同级比较

as ... as, not as(so) ... as

The television is expensive.

That television is as expensive as this one.

My father is as tall as my mother.

My wife is as beautiful as my mother.

The red is as blunt as the green one.

This story is as interesting as that one.

The French test is as difficult as English test for me.

My mother is not as tall as my father.

This television is not as expensive as that one.

Of course, this television is not as good as that one.

I like this model.

This model is expensive.

That model is more expensive.

This model is the most expensive in the shop.

This story is interesting.

That one is more interesting.

This is the most interesting story I have ever read.

This test is difficult.

That test is more difficult.

This is the most difficult test I have ever done.

Mary is a beautiful.

Her sister is more beautiful.

Sophia is the most beautiful girl in the class.

less, the least.

This model is expensive.

This model is less expensive.

This is the least expensive model.

This test is difficult.

That test is less difficult.

This is the least difficult test I have ever done.

This book is interesting.

This book is less interesting.

This is the least interesting book I have ever read.

This book is the least interesting I have ever read.

Lesson 112 How do they compare?

The red apple is as sweet as the green one.

My grandfather is as short as my grandmother.

This knife is as sharp as that one.

The yellow car is not as clean as the white car.

The brown bag is not as new as the red one.

This test is difficult.

This test is more difficult.

This is the most difficult test I have ever done.

This book is interesting.

This book is less interesting.

This is the least interesting book I have ever read.

This book is the least interesting I have ever read.

Written exercises 书面练习 A page 228

1 cheaper

2 more expensive

3 easier

4 more difficult

Lesson 111 The most expensive model

[词汇 • 略]

model n. 型号，式样，模特

fashion model 时装模特

afford v. 付得起，腾出时间

I can only afford two days this week.

I want to buy a television.

I like this model.

But it is too expensive for me.

I can't afford it.

Can you afford it?

My husband always wants the best.

But we can't afford it.

pay a deposit of

month

pound

You can pay a deposit of one hundred pounds, and then twenty pounds a month for three years.

You can pay a deposit of thirty pounds, and then forty (笔误, 应为fourteen) pounds a month for five years.  
thousand

You can pay a deposit of five thousand yuan and then three hundred yuan a month for ten years.

buy sth. on instalments

I want to buy the house on instalments.

They bought the house on instalments last year.

My sister has bought the house on instalment.

I like the television, but I can't afford it. Can I buy it on instalments?

cheap

good price

market

standard

standard market price 标准市场价

[词汇 • 略]

What does Mr.Frith want to do?

Is Mr.Frith a millionaire?

Do all the millionaires buy things on instalment?

Does a millionaire buy things on instalment?

Which model does Mr.Frith like in the shop?

How much does it cost?

Does Mrs.Frith like this model?

What doesn't she like?

Does she like the price?

Does Mr.Frith think that they can afford the most expensive model?

How does Mr.Frith want to buy the model?

How can they buy the model on instalment?

Is Mrs.Frith very happy?

Is there any less expensive model in the shop?

Does Mrs.Frith like the less expensive model?

Where is Mr.Frith?

Is he with his wife?

What do they want to do?

Does Mr.Frith like one model in the shop?

Is it the most expensive model in the shop?

Can they afford it?

Does the shop assistant advise Mr.Frith to buy a less expensive model?

How much does the less expensive model cost?

Is the less expensive model as good as the most expensive model?

Does Mr.Frith think the most expensive model is worth the money?

How can Mr.Frith buy the model?

Can he buy the television on instalment?

Does his wife like his idea?  
Is Mr.Frith a millionaire?  
Does Mrs.Frith think that Mr.Frith is a millionaire?  
Does Mr.Frith always buy things on instalment?

[课文]

I like this television very much. How much does it **cost**?  
It's the most expensive model in the shop. It costs five hundred pounds.  
That's too expensive for us. We can't afford **all that money**.  
This model's **less** expensive than that one. It's only three hundred pounds.  
But of course, it's not **as good as** the expensive one.  
I don't like this model.  
The other model's more expensive, but **it's worth** the money.  
Can we **buy it on instalments**? Of course.  
You can **pay a deposit of** thirty pounds, and then fourteen pounds a month for three years.  
Do you like it, dear?  
I certainly **do**, but I don't like the price.  
You always want the best, but we can't afford it.  
Sometimes you think you're a millionaire!  
Millionaires don't buy things on instalments!

A millionaire doesn't buy things on instalment.

[词汇·略]

Lesson 112 How do they compare?

Written exercises 书面练习B page 228

- 1 Is the policeman as tall as the policewoman?  
No, he isn't. The policeman isn't as tall as the policewoman.
- 4 Is the red pencil as blunt as the green pencil?  
No, it isn't. The red pencil isn't as blunt as the green pencil.
- 5 Is the blue car as clean as the red car?  
No, it isn't. The blue car isn't as clean as the red car.
- 6 Is the woman as fat as the man?  
No, she isn't. The woman isn't as fat as the man.

Written exercises 书面练习C page 228

- 1 No, it isn't. It is more expensive. It's the most expensive radio I've ever seen.
- 2 No, he isn't. He is more intelligent. He is the most intelligent person I've ever met.
- 3 No, it isn't. It's more interesting. It's the most interesting book I've ever read.
- 4 No, it isn't. It's less difficult. It is the least difficult test I've ever done.

## Lesson 113 Small change

[词汇]

conductor n. 售票员

fare n. 车费，车票

change v. 兑换

note n. 纸币

passenger n. 乘客

none pron. 没有任何东西

neither adv. 也不

get off 下车

tramp n. 流浪汉

except prep. 除…外

Can you change this note?

notebook 笔记本

take notes 做笔记

note-taking

[none pron. 没有任何东西]

no adj.

not any

I have no time.

I don't have any time.

I haven't any time.

I have none.

There is no milk in the bottle.

There isn't any milk in the bottle.

There is none.

I have not friends.

I don't have any friends.

I have none.

She has no money.

She doesn't have any money.

She has none.

## Lesson 114 I've got none

Written exercises 书面练习 A page 232

1 There are no books on that shelf.

2 I have got no money.

3 There is no coffee in this tin.

4 I saw no cars in the street.

Written exercises 书面练习 B page 232

1 No, I haven't got any milk.

I've got no milk. I've got none.

2 No, I haven't got any envelopes.

I've got no envelopes. I've got none.

3 No, I haven't got any magazines.

I've got no magazines. I've got none.

4 No, I haven't got any bread.

I've got no bread. I've got none.

Have you got any chocolate?

I haven't got any.

I've got no chocolate.

I've got none.

Have you got any envelopes?

I haven't got any.

I've got no envelopes.

I've got none.

Have you got any cake?

I've got some.

Have you got any biscuits?

I've got some.

#### Lesson 113 Small change

neither

Lucy is a student.

So am I.

So are they.

So is her brother.

I like music.

So does my brother.

I don't like music.

So does my father.

So do they.

They went to the party yesterday.

So did I.

They didn't go to the party yesterday.

They are swimming.

So is the boy.

Sally can speak English.

So can I.

They must go home.

So must you.

I have some change.

So have I.

They have some money.  
So has the tramp.  
So have the tramps.  
She isn't a student.  
Neither is he.  
Neither are they.  
She isn't a good person.  
Neither is her husband.  
Neither are they.  
I don't like you.  
Neither does my mother.  
Neither do my grandfather and grandmother.  
I can't swim.  
Neither can my brother.  
We didn't go there yesterday.  
Neither did Sally.  
They are singing.  
So is the girl.  
You mustn't smoke here.  
Neither must they.  
I don't have any change.  
Neither do they.  
I haven't any change.  
Neither have they.

I haven't any either.  
Neither have I.  
So have I.  
So has she.  
I've got some.  
So have I.

Written exercises 书面练习 C page 232  
nor

- 1 Neither am I. I'm not hungry, either.
- 2 Neither did I. I didn't meet him, either.
- 3 Neither was I. I wasn't at church, either.
- 4 Neither do I. I don't like ice cream, either.
- 5 Neither can I. I can't swim, either.
- 6 Neither am I. I am not a doctor, either.

Written exercises 书面练习 D page 232

- 1 So am I. I'm hungry, too.
- 2 So did I. I met him, too.
- 3 So was I. I was at church yesterday, too.

4 So do I. I like ice cream, too.

5 So can I. I can swim, too.

6 So am I. I am a doctor, too.

### Lesson 113 Small change

You must get off the bus.

except prep. 除...外（不包括）

besides 除了（包括）

There are five girls besides two boys.

They all went there except me.

They all went there besides me.

[课文注释]

Fares, please!

Trafalgar Square

How many people are mentioned here in this dialogue?

Where does the man want to go?

What's the problem with him?

What does he give to the conductor?

What will he do?

What does the conductor say?

What will he do?

Can the two men and two women change the note?

Are they all millionaires?

What happened at last?

A man wants to go to the Trafalgar Square.

But he doesn't have any change.

But he hasn't any change.

He gives a ten-pound note to the conductor.

But the conductor can't change the note.

some of the children

some of the passengers

The conductor says that he will ask some of the passengers.

But no passengers can change the note.

They say they have no small change.

There two tramps on the bus.

They say that they can change the note.

[课文]

Fares, please! Trafalgar Square, please.

I'm sorry, sir.

I can't change a ten-pound note.

Haven't you got any small change?  
I've got no small change, I'm afraid.  
I'll ask some of the passengers.  
Have you any small change, sir?  
I'm sorry. I've got none.  
I haven't got any either.  
Can you change this **ten-pound** note, madam?  
I'm afraid I can't. Neither can I.  
I'm very sorry, sir. You must get off the bus.  
None of our passengers can change this note.  
They're all millionaires!  
Except us.  
I've got some small change. So have I.

#### Lesson 115 Knock, Knock!

[词汇]

anyone pron. 任何人  
knock v. 敲，打  
everything pron. 一切事物  
quiet adj. 宁静的，安静的  
impossible adj. 不可能的  
invite v. 邀请  
anything pron. 任何东西  
nothing pron. 什么也没有  
lemonade n. 柠檬水  
joke v. 开玩笑

#### Lesson 116 Every, no, any and some

不定代词

every 每一个  
everyone 每一个人  
everybody 每一个人（多用于口语中）  
everything 每件事情  
everywhere 到处，每个地方

none 没有

no one 没有人  
nobody 没有人  
nothing 没有什么事情  
nowhere 不在任何地方

any 任何

anyone 任何人  
anybody 任何人

anything 任何事情  
anywhere 任何地方  
[any-用于疑问句与否定句中]

some 一些  
someone 某人  
somebody 某人  
something 某件事情  
somewhere 某个地方

Where are you?  
Somewhere in Beijing.

不定代词可以做主语，宾语和表语

Someone is knocking at the door.  
Nobody is absent.  
Something is wrong with my watch.  
Everything is all right.

I know nothing about it.  
I didn't see anyone in the garden.  
She didn't talk to anyone at the party.  
She talked to nobody at the party.

She is nobody.  
That is nothing. It's nothing.  
This is something. This is something we must decide first.  
He is somebody.

I am nobody. But I have a dream.

Everyone is asleep.  
Everybody is asleep.  
Everything is untidy.  
I looked for my pen everywhere.  
Is there anyone at home?  
Is there anybody at home?  
Is there anything in that box?  
I couldn't find my pen anywhere.  
There's no one at home.  
There's nobody at home.  
There is nothing in this box.  
Where did you go yesterday?  
Nowhere. I stayed at home.  
There is someone in the garden.

There is somebody in the garden.

There is something under that chair.

My glasses must be somewhere.

You're wearing them.

[词汇]

asleep adj. 睡着（用作表语）

glasses n. 眼镜

Written exercises 书面练习 A page 236

1 I did nothing.

2 I saw no one.

3 I went nowhere.

4 I met nobody.

Written exercises 书面练习 B page 236

1 No, I didn't hear anything. I heard nothing.

2 No, I didn't speak to anyone. I spoke to no one.

3 No, I didn't go anywhere. I went nowhere.

4 No, I didn't buy anything. I bought nothing.

5 No, I didn't write to anybody. I wrote to nobody.

6 No, I didn't meet anyone. I met no one.

Written exercises 书面练习 C page 236

look out of the window

hurry to work

eat

drink

1 Everyone's looking out of the window.

2 Everyone's hurrying to work.

3 Everyone's eating.

4 Everyone's drinking lemonade.

Written exercises 书面练习 D page 236

不定式做宾语或宾语补足语

beautiful flower

something good

something bad

动词不定式做定语

I have got something to wear.

I haven't got anything to wear.

I have got nothing to wear.

1 No, I haven't got anything to eat. I have got nothing to eat.

He has got something to eat.

2 No, I haven't got anything to do. I have got nothing to do.

They have got something to do.

3 No, I haven't got anything to drink. I have got nothing to drink.

She's got something to drink.

4 No, I haven't got anything to read. I've got nothing to read.

He's got something to read.

Lesson 115 Knock, Knock!

Everything is quiet.

I must go to the greengrocery[疑为笔误，应为greengrocer's] to buy some fruit.

做目的状语

It is impossible for sb. to do sth.

It is possible for me to pass the Band 6 Exam.

invite sb. to do sth.

I invited some of my friends to have lunch yesterday.

She is joking.

Don't believe him.

She is only joking.

Who invited who to have lunch?

How many people here are mentioned in this dialogue?

Who are they?

Where are Tom and Carol having lunch now?

Why are they having lunch in garden?

What does Jim want to drink?

Is there any beer?

What does Carol say?

What does Carol ask Jim to drink?

What is Carol doing?

Is there anyone in the house?

## Lesson 115 Knock, Knock

Is there anyone at home?

Is everything very quiet?

What is Jim sure?

What does Helen think?

What does Helen ask Jim to do?

Jim is knocking at the door.

But there is no one at home.

Everything is very quiet.

Jim is sure there is no one at home.

I am sure there is no one at home.

But Helen thinks it is impossible.

Because Carol and Tom invited them to lunch.

look through

ask sib. to do sth.

Helen asks Jim to look through the window.

What can Jim see?

What does Helen ask Jim to do?

Is everyone in the garden?

Why are they having lunch in the garden?

Let's go home.

try

Let's try the back door.

Helen asks Jim to try the back door.

Everyone is in the garden.

Everyone wants to have lunch in the garden.

Everyone wants to stay in the warm house in winter.

What does Jim want to do?

Jim wants to have a glass of beer.

But Carol says there is no beer left.

Carol asks Jim to have some lemonade.

She is only joking.

[课文]

Isn't there anyone at home? I'll knock again, Helen.

Everything's very quiet. I'm sure there's no one at home.

But that's impossible.

Carol and Tom invited us to lunch.

**Look through** the window. Can you see anything?

Nothing at all. Let's try the back door.

Look! Everyone's in the garden.

Hello, Helen. Hello, Jim.

Everybody wants to have lunch in the garden.

It's **nice and warm** out here.

Come and have **something to drink**. Thanks, Carol.

May I have a glass of beer please?

Beer? There's none **left**.

You can have some lemonade. Lemonade!

Don't **believe** her, Jim. She's only joking.

Have some beer.

see through 看透

left adj. 剩余的

believe in 信任

## Lesson 117 Tommy's breakfast

[词汇]

dinning room(hall) 饭厅

coin n. 硬币

mouth n. 嘴

swallow v. 吞下

later adv. 后来

toilet n. 厕所，盥洗室

过去进行时和过去完成时

现在进行时，一般过去时，现在完成时，过去进行时，过去完成时

过去进行时表示的概念

1 在过去某个特定的时间正在进行或发生的动作。

2 当过去的一个动作发生的时候另外一个动作正在进行。

结构：

主语+ was (were) + doing

I was sleeping at eight o'clock yesterday morning.

They were swimming in the river at three o'clock yesterday afternoon.

at this time 这个时候

I was walking in the street at this time last week.

I was leaving the house when he arrived.

when 当……的时候

while 当……的时候（强调两个动作的同时进行）

just as 正当……

I cut myself while I was shaving.

I cut myself badly while I was shaving.

过去完成时：过去某个特定的时间之前动作已经完成。过去两个动作的比较，发生在前面的是过去完成时，后面的是一般过去时。

结构：

主语 + had + 动词的过去分词

I had read five books by the end of last year.

term

learnt

The students had learnt two thousand words by the end of last term.

before, after

Mr. Smith bought a new car after he had sold his old car.

We had had dinner before they arrived.

When I was leaving the house he arrived.

When I was having breakfast, someone knocked at the door.

ring, rang

The telephone rang just as I was opening the door.

slip 滑倒

hurt 伤着

get off the bus 下公共汽车

When she was getting off the bus, she slipped and hurt herself.

My wife was cooking in the kitchen while I was working in the garden.

Lesson 118 What were you doing?

page 239

ask

sell sold sold

I asked the price of the car, but they had already sold it.

run, ran, run

leave, left, left

platform 站台

The day before yesterday, I ran to the platform quickly, but the train had already left.

go, went, gone

finish, finished

She had finished the housework before she went out.

go on holiday 度假

take the exam 考试

go, went, gone

take, took, taken

She went on the holiday after she had taken the exam.

Lesson 120 It had already happened.

page 243

correct 纠正

exercise 练习

Lesson 118 What were you doing?

page 239

Written exercises 书面练习 A

1 He knocked at the door when I was answering the phone.

- 2 He came downstairs when I was having breakfast.
- 3 The phone rang when I was washing the dishes.
- 4 The boss arrived when she was typing a letter.
- 5 The rain left when I was buying the tickets.
- 6 It rained heavily when I was driving to London.

page 240

Written exercise 书面练习B

cook a meal, wash the dishes, work in the garden, type letters  
shave, boil the milk, phone my sister, dust the bedroom

- 1 When he arrived I was cooking a meal.
- 2 He arrived when I was washing the dishes.
- 3 When he arrived I was working in the garden.
- 4 When he arrived I was typing letters.
- 5 When he arrived I was shaving.
- 6 When he arrived I was boiling the milk.
- 7 When he arrived I was phoning to my sister.
- 8 When he arrived I was dusting the bedroom.

page 240

Written exercises 书面练习 C

- 1 While I was cooking the dinner, he was having a wash.
- 2 While I was cooking the dinner, he was watching television.
- 3 While I was cooking the dinner, he was cleaning his shoes.
- 4 While I was cooking the dinner, he was listening to the radio.
- 5 While I was cooking the dinner, he was changing his suit.
- 6 While I was cooking the dinner, he was sitting in the dining room.
- 7 While I was cooking the dinner, he was reading the paper.
- 8 While I was cooking the dinner, he was driving home from work.

Lesson 120 It had already happened.

page 243

Written exercises 书面练习A

- 1 He dropped the vase after he had taken it into the living room.
- 2 He bought another car after he had sold his old one.
- 3 He swept the floor after he had dusted everything.
- 4 She drank the milk after she had boiled it.
- 5 He turned off the television after he had seen the programme.
- 6 He went to bed after he had done his homework.

page 244 Written exercises 书面练习

- 1 Yes, I have just seen it. I had never seen it before.

- 2 Yes, they have just read it. They had never read it before.
- 3 Yes, she has just tried it. She had never tried it before.
- 4 Yes, I have just been there. I had never been there before.
- 5 Yes, She has just written a letter in English. She had never written a letter in English before.
- 6 Yes, she has just watched this programme. She had never watched this programme before.

page 244 Written exercises 书面练习C

- 1 It was too late. He had already painted it.
- 2 It was too late. She had already dusted it.
- 3 It was too late. You had already telephoned him.
- 4 It was too late. You had already corrected it.
- 5 It was too late. They had already shutted it.
- 6 It was too late. She had already made it.

page 244 Written exercises 书面练习D

- 1 I went to the doctor after I had made an appointment.
- 2 The boss left the office after he had finished work.
- 3 My wife went out after she had finished the housework.
- 4 The teacher gave me my exercise book after he had corrected it.
- 5 The girl went on holiday after she had taken the examination.
- 6 My father bought a new car after he had sold his old one last week.

Lesson 117 Tommy's breakfast

[词汇·略]

- What happened?  
When he dropped some coins?  
What was my husband doing?  
Where were the coins?  
Did they try to find the coins?

When my husband was going into the dinning room this morning, he dropped some coins on the floor. There were coins everywhere.

We tried to look for them, but we could not find them all.

What did Tommy find on the floor?

After Tommy found two coins, what did he do?

When Tommy found the two coins, what were Tommy's parents doing?

Did Tommy's parents try to get the coins?

Could they get the coins?

While we were having breakfast, our little boy, Tommy, found two small coins on the floor.

He put them both into his mouth.

We both tried to get the coins, but it was too late.

Tommy had already swallowed them.

When the lady's husband phoned from the office, what was she doing?

What did her husband say?

How did the woman answer?

Later that morning, when I was doing the housework, my husband phoned me from the office.

'How's Tommy?' He asked.

'I don't know,' I answered, 'Tommy's been to the toilet three times this morning, but I haven't had any change yet!'

My husband is an engineer.

I am a housewife.

I stay at home every day.

I have a lot of housework to do.

My husband is very busy every day.

My son's Tommy.

He is the only son in my family.

He is very clever.

naughty 淘气的

But he is naughty too.

When my husband was going into the dining room this morning, he dropped some coins on the floor.

There were coins everywhere.

We looked for them, but we could not find them all.

While we were having breakfast, our little boy, Tommy, found two small coins on the floor.

He put them both into his mouth.

We both tried to get the coins, but it was too late.

He had already swallowed them.

Later that morning, when I was doing the housework, my husband phoned me from the office.

'How's Tommy?' he asked.

'I don't know,' I answered, 'Tommy's been to the toilet three times this morning, but I haven't had any change yet!'

## Lesson 117 Tommy's breakfast

[课文]

When my husband was **going into** the dining room this morning, he **dropped** some coins **on the floor**.

There were coins everywhere.

We **looked** for them, but we could not find them all.

While we were having breakfast, our little boy, Tommy, found two small coins on the floor.

He **put** them both **into** his mouse.

We both **tried to** get the coins, but it was too late.

Tommy **had already swallowed** them!

Later that morning, when I was doing the housework, my husband phoned me from the office.

"How's Tommy?" He asked.

"I don't know," I answered, "Tommy's been to the toilet three times this morning, but I haven't had any change yet!"

## Lesson 119 A true story

[词汇]

story n. 故事

happen v. 发生

thief n. 贼

enter v. 进入

dark adj. 黑暗的

torch n. 手电筒

voice n. (说话的) 声音

parrot n. 鹦鹉

in the dark

It's very dark.

[story 一般性的故事，可以真实的也可以是虚构的]

fable 寓言故事

legend 传奇故事

tale 神州故事

I want to tell you a true story?

Do you like stories?

story book 故事书

story teller 讲故事的人

make up 化妆，编造

a friend of mine

one of my friends

[happen 偶然的发生]

take place [发生，经过安排的]

It happens to sb.

It happened to sb.

It happened to a friend of mine last year.

Don't be angry, it happens every day.

Do you like stories?

I want to tell you a true story.

It happened to one of my friends last year.

The wedding took place yesterday.

It happens to somebody.

It happened to somebody.

in the dark 黑暗中，秘密的

torch song 忧郁的情歌

[voice 嗓音]

sound 声音

noise 噪音

the sound of music 音乐之声

throat 嗓子

Sb. has a good voice.

I had a good voice.

[提示]

When did the story happen?

Who did the story happen to?

Who is George?

When the story happened, what was George doing?

Do you like stories?

I want to tell you a true story.

It happened to a friend of mine a year ago.

While my friend, George, was reading in bed, two thieves climbed into his kitchen.

After they had entered the house, they went into the dining room.

It was very dark, so they turned on a torch.

Suddenly, they heard a voice behind them.

"What's up? What's up?" Someone called.

Two thieves went into the dining room after they had entered the house. It was very dark.

The thieves turned on the torch.

Suddenly, they heard a voice behind them.

"What's up? What's up?" someone called.

The thieves dropped the torch and ran away as quickly as they could.

George heard the noise and came downstairs quickly.

He turned on the light, but he couldn't see anyone.

George saw the parrot.

What did the parrot say?

"What's up, George?" he called.

How did George answer?

"Nothing, Henry," George said and smiled. "Go back to sleep."

George heard the noise and came downstairs quickly.  
He turned on the light, but he couldn't see anyone.  
But George's parrot, Henry, was still there.  
"What's up, George?" he called.  
"Nothing, Henry," George said and smiled. "Go back to sleep."

[课文]

Do you like stories? I want to **tell you a true story**.  
It **happened to a friend of mine** a year ago.  
While my friend, George, was reading in bed, two thieves **climbed into** his kitchen.  
After they had entered the house, they went into the dining room.  
It was very dark, so they **turned on** a torch.  
Suddenly, they heard a voice behind them.  
"What's up? What's up?" someone called.  
The thieves dropped the torch and **ran away as quickly as they could**.  
George heard the noise and came downstairs quickly.  
He **turned on** the light, but he couldn't see anyone.  
The thieves had already gone.  
But George's parrot, Henry, was still there.  
"What's up, George?" He called.  
"Nothing, Henry," George said and smiled. "Go back to sleep."

I will help you as possible as I can.  
I will love you as much as I can.

Lesson 121 The man in a hat

[词汇]

customer n. 顾客  
forget v. 忘记  
manager n. 经理  
serve v. 照应，服务，接待  
counter n. 柜台  
recognize v. 认出

forget -> forgot -> forgotten  
on the counter

This is something (that) I must decide about.  
This is something about which I must decide.

forget to do sth. 忘记去做某事  
forget doing sth. 忘记做了某事  
I have forgotten to bring my book.  
I will never forget finding that rare coin in my garden.  
take sth. with sb.

I bought a book yesterday.

But I forgot to take it with me.

expensive 昂贵的

dictionary 字典

half an hour ago

I bought two expensive dictionaries here half an hour ago. But I forgot to take them with me.

Who served you?

The lady served me.

The lady is standing behind the counter.

The lady (who is) standing behind the counter served me.

Which books did you buy?

I bought the books.

The books are on the counter.

I bought the books which are on the counter.

gentleman 绅士

Did you serve this gentleman half an hour ago?

He is the man.

The man bought these books.

He is the man who bought these books.

He says he is the man who bought these books.

I can't remember.

I served the man.

The man who I served was wearing a hat.

This is the man.

You served the man.

This is the man who you served.

Is this the man who you served?

[课文]

I bought two expensive dictionaries here **half an hour ago**, but I forgot to **take them with me**.

Who served you, sir?

The lady who is standing behind the counter.

Which books did you buy?

The books which are on the counter.

Did you serve this gentleman half an hour ago, Caroline?

He says he's the man who bought these books.

I can't remember.

The man **who** I served was wearing a hat.

Have you got a hat, sir?

Yes, I have.

Would you put it on, please?

All right.

Is this the man that you served, Caroline?

Yes. I recognize him now.

定语从句：

beautiful flower

a book on the desk

I saw the boy yesterday.

This is the boy.

This is the boy I saw yesterday.

I have a sister.

She lives in Paris.

I have a sister who lives in Paris.

关系代词的功能：

1 连接主句和从句 2 在从句中做句子成分。

定语从句就是由一个句子修饰限定另一个句子的中心词。被修饰限定的成分叫先行词。连接主句和从句的词叫关系代词。

关系代词的作用有两点：

1 连接主句和从句

2 在从句中从句子成分，作主语时不能省略，作宾语时可以省略。

关系代词

who, whom, whose, which, that

who

先行词是人 + who + 动词

The man is Mr.White.

The man has white hair.

The man who has white hair is Mr.White.

whose

先行词是人， whose + 名词

I have a friend.

His father is a teacher.

I have a friend whose father is a teacher.

whom

先行词是人， whom + 及物动词/不及物动词 + 介词

当介词提前的时候，关系代词不能省略。

The man is my uncle.

We met the man.

The man we met is my uncle.

The man whom we met is my uncle.

The man who met us is my uncle.

The man is my uncle.

I spoke to the man.

The man whom I spoke to is my uncle.

The man to whom I spoke is my uncle.

当介词提前的时候，先行词是物时，只能用which

I have a sister.

She lives in Paris.

I have a sister who lives in Paris.

The man who has white hair is Mr.White.

I have a friend whose father is a teacher.

whom

I see you everyday.

I look at the blackboard everyday.

The man who we met is my uncle.

speak to sb.

I spoke to the man.

The man whom I spoke to is my uncle.

The man to whom I spoke is my uncle.

which 是指人以外的生命或没有生命的东西。

先行词（物） + which + 动词

He likes the house.

The house has a lot of windows.

He likes the house which has a lot of/many windows.

The books are on the desk.

The books are mine.

The books are on the counter.

The books which are on the counter are mine.

The dog is his.

The dog is carrying a basket.

The dog which is carrying a basket is his.

The dog carrying a basket is his.

Those men are making all that noise.

Those men are repairing the road.

Those men who are repairing the road are making all that noise.

Those men repairing the road are making all that noise.

## 语法讲解

He is the man. He came here last week. who

He is the man who came here last week.

She is the woman. I served the woman yesterday. who/whom

She is the woman who I served yesterday.

He likes the house which has many windows.

当先行词是物时，后边是which。which后有两种情况。

1 主语 + 及物动词。

2 主语 + 不及物动词 + 介词。

This is the letter. I received the letter yesterday. the letter/ which

This is the letter which I received yesterday.

I like the house. He lives in the house. the house/ which

I like the house which he lives in. (which可以省略)

I like the house in which he lives. (which不可以省略)

That is the boy. I talked about the boy last week. the boy/who/whom

That is the boy who/whom I talked about/told you about last week.

That is the boy about whom I told you last week.

当先行词是人时，后边是who/that

当先行词是人且人做宾语时，后边是who/whom/that

1 在从句的情况下，人作主语，后边是及物动词或不及物动词加介词，这样的情况下，关系代词可以省略。

2 如果介词提前了，介词后只能加whom

当先行词是物时，后边是which/that，如果从句是进行时态，which和be动词都可以省略。

当先行词是物时，关系代词是which/that，后边是人或物都可，后边接及物动词或不及物动词加介词，which/that 作宾语，则可以省略

如果是不及物动词加介词情况下，把介词提前，只能用which.

当先行词是人和动词时，后边是that

I saw a boy. The boy and his dog were walking in the park.

I saw a boy and his dog that were walking in the park.

当先行词前由序数词、最高级以及the only, the very, the same, all所修饰，或先行词为nothing, anything, everything 等不定代词时，后边的关系代词只能是that.

以who/what/which开头的疑问句，后边的关系代词只能是that.

## 补充材料 P33

II.

9 that

10 that

3 which

4 who/that

5 who/whom/that

6 which/that

7 which/that

8 who/whom/that

## Lesson 122 Who(whom), which and that

Who served you?

The man (who/ that is) standing behind the counter.

The man (who/ that is) standing behind the counter served me.

Who served you?

The woman who/that is standing behind the counter.

Who is making all that noise?

The men (who/that are) repairing the road (are making all that noise).

I served him yesterday.

He is the man who(m)/that I served yesterday.

I served her yesterday.

She is the woman who(m)/that I served yesterday.

I saw them yesterday.

They are the men who(m)/that I saw yesterday.

Which book did you buy?

The book which/that is on the counter.

I bought the book which ...

Which books did you buy?

The books which/that are on the counter.

I bought the books which ...

Which dog is yours?

The dog (which/that is) carrying that basket (is mine).

[词汇]

road n. 路

Exercises P248

Examples:

1 This is the car (which) the mechanic repaired yesterday.

2 He is the man (who/whom) I invited to the party.

3 These are the things (which) I bought yesterday.

4 He is the man who came here last week.

5 He is the policeman who caught the thieves.

6 She is the nurse who looked after me.

7 She is the woman (who/whom) I met at the party.

8 I am the person who wrote to you.

B Example

1 Who met him? That woman?

Yes, she is the woman who met him.

2 Who sat there? That man?

Yes, he is the man who sat there.

3 Who made it? That woman?

Yes, she is the woman who made it.

4 Who read it? That man?

Yes, he is the man who read it.

5 Who shut it? That man?

Yes, he is the man who shut it.

8 Who saw me? That woman?

Yes, she is the woman who saw me.

### C Example

1 Who(m) did you see? That man?

Yes, he is the man whom I saw.

2 Whom did you telephone? That girl?

Yes, she is the girl whom I telephoned.

3 Whom did you invite? That boy?

Yes, he is the boy whom I invited.

4 Whom did you take to the cinema? That old man?

Yes, he is the old man whom I took to the cinema.

5 Who did you find in the garden? That boy?

Yes, he is the boy whom I found in the garden.

6 Whom did you drive to London? That girl?

Yes, she is the girl whom I drove to London.

drive/drove/driven

hear/heard/heard

7 Whom did you hear? That woman?

Yes, she is the woman whom I heard.

8 Whom did you remember? That boy?

Yes, he is the boy whom I remembered.

### Lesson 124 (Who)/(whom), (which) and (that)

Who serve you?

The man (who is) standing behind the counter (served me).

Who served you?

The woman (who is) standing behind the counter.

Who is making all that noise?

The men (who are) repairing the road (are making all that noise).

I served him yesterday.

He is the man who(m)/that I served yesterday.

### Exercises P252

#### Examples

This is the ship on which I travelled.

1 She is the woman I drove to London.

2 That's the film I saw.

3 That's the man I spoke to.

That's the man to whom I spoke.

4 They are the thieves the police caught.

5 These are the letters I typed.

6 These are the people you ask me about.

These are the people about whom you ask me.

### B Examples

1 Which man? That man?

Yes, that's the man I saw yesterday.

2 Which car? That car?

Yes, that's the car I repaired yesterday.

3 Which woman? That woman?

Yes, that's the woman I drove to London yesterday.

4 Which umbrella? That umbrella?

Yes, that's the umbrella I bought yesterday.

5 Which medicine? That medicine?

Yes, that's the medicine I took yesterday.

6 Which man? That man?

Yes, that's the man I invited to my house yesterday.

### C Examples

This is the film about which you told me.

1 This is the village I wrote to you about.

This is the village about which I wrote to you.

2 He is the person I have heard about.

He is the person about whom I have heard.

3 This is the test I spoke to you about.

This is the test about which I spoke to you.

4 She is the woman I read about.

She is the woman about whom I read.

5 This is something new I haven't thought about.

This is something new about which I haven't thought.

一般情况下，形容词修饰名词是放在名词的前边，而修饰不定代词时，则放在不定代词的后边。

6 This is something I must decide about.

This is something about which I must decide.

## Lesson 123 A trip to Australia

### [词汇]

during prep. 在...期间

trip n. 旅行

travel v. 旅行

offer v. 提供

job n. 工作

guess v. 猜

grow(grew/grown) v. 长，让...生长

beard n. (下巴上的)胡子，络腮胡子

tourist

tour 观光旅行

trip 短途旅行

travel 旅行，泛指

journey 行程

a trip to Australia

a trip to Paris

I want to travel.

travel (a)around the world/China

If I have some money, I'll travel round the world.

If I win the match, I'll buy a big house for you.

see the world

If I have some money, I'll see the world.

travel (a)round the world

during my trip to Paris

during my father's trip to H.K.

take a photograph

take/took/taken

I took some photographs last week.

I took some photographs during my trip to Paris.

I took some photographs during my trip to Australia.

This is a photograph which I took during my trip to Australia.

this is a photograph which my father took during his trip to H.K.

These are the photographs (which) I took last week.

traveled offered

Can you offer me a job?

offer sb. sth.

The man offered me a job last year.

The man offered me a job in Australia last year.

He is the man. The man offered me a job in Australia.

He is the man who offered me a job in Australia.

traveled

I traveled on this ship last year. This is a ship.

This is the ship (which) I traveled on last year.

This is the ship on which I traveled last year.

grow a beard

I like to grow a beard, but my wife doesn't like.

I grew a beard last year.

I traveled around China last year.

I grew a beard during my trip, but I shaved it off when I came back because my wife didn't like.

shave ... up

shaved it up

Listen to the tape

Who is Mike taking to now?

Scott.

What is Mike showing to Scott?

Some photographs?

What are the photographs?

Did the man get a job in Australia?

Did Mike take a photograph with the man who offered him a job?

Yes.

Why did the man shave his beard after he came back?

Because his wife didn't like it.

This is a photograph which Mike took during his trip to Australia.

He is showing the photograph to Scott.

This is a good photograph.

These are the people (who) Mike met during the trip.

This is a beautiful ship.

What a beautiful ship (it is)!

How beautiful (the ship is)!

This is the ship (which) they traveled on last year.

This is the ship on which they traveled last year.

This is the man (who/whom/that) I told you about.

This is the man about whom I told you.

This is the man who offered me a job in Australia.

I grew a beard during my trip, but I shaved it off when I came home, because my wife didn't like it.

[课文]

Look, Scott.

This is a photograph I took during my trip to Australia.

Let me see it, Mike.

This is a good photograph.

Who are these people?

They're people I met during the trip.

That's the ship we traveled on.

What a beautiful ship!

Who's this?

That's the man I told you about.

Remember?

Ah yes.

The one who offered you a job in Australia.

That's right.

Who's this?

Guess!

It's not you, is it?

That's right.

I grew a beard during the trip, but I shaved it off when I came home.

Why did you shave it off?

特别说明：本文根据新东方第一册网络教程（FLASH）制作，由眼角的泪光整理发布，不得用于商业目的

**My wife didn't like it!**

## Lesson 125 Tea for two

[词汇]

water v. 浇水

terribly adv. 非常

dry adj. 干燥的，干的

nuisance n. 讨厌的东西或人

mean(meant/meant) v. 意味着，意思是

surprise n. 惊奇，意外的事

waters 水域 / watermelon 西瓜

I'm afraid I must water the garden now.

very / terribly / awfully

I'm very happy.

I'm very sorry.

terribly/awful 表示负面的意思，very可以表示负面的意思，也可以表示下面的意思。

It is cool today. It is a good day for picnic.

It is very cool.

It is terrible/awful cool.

It's dry this year.

It's very/terribly/awfully dry this year.

It is a nuisance!

The man is a nuisance.

What a nuisance (it is)!

mean person/small person

That man is really very mean. / He is a small person.

by all means 想尽办法，不择手段

I want to pass the band six exam by all means.

You must go home.

You must water the garden.

What do you mean?

What do you know?

I know he is a good person.

I mean you must go home.

It's raining.

It means (that) I needn't (don't need to) water the garden.

I need to go home.

I needn't (don't need to) go home.

It's a surprise.

pleasant

It's a pleasant surprise.

Listen to the story about a man and his wife.

His wife wants the man to have a cup of tea with her in the living room.

But it's dry. The man thinks that he must water the garden now.  
But the wife wants the man to come in and have a cup of tea with her.  
And the man doesn't want to come in.  
The lady is a little bit angry.  
So she wants to drink a cup of tea by herself.  
But later, it's raining/ it begins to rain.  
Then that is a good news for the man.  
That means the man needn't water the garden.  
And he can come in and have a cup of tea with his wife.

have to/ has to/ will have to/had to/ have had to/ has had to  
must/ have to 必须

1 must是情态动词；have to是复合动词

2 must没有时态变化；have to有时态变化，have to在变为否定和疑问形式时要根据不同的助动词来变化（一般现在时don't/doesn't；将来时后边直接变化；过去时didn't；完成时have not had to）

3 have to是客观需要，must主观的必须

take a taxi

I must take a taxi.

I have to take a taxi.

I don't have to take a taxi.

Do you have to take a taxi?

I have to take a taxi every day.

I don't have to take a taxi every day.

Do you have to take a taxi every day?

She has to get up early tomorrow.

She doesn't have to get up early tomorrow.

Does she have to get up early tomorrow?

I had to water the garden every day last year.

I didn't have to water the garden every day last year.

Did you have to water the garden every day last year?

I have waited for you for two hours.

I have had to wait for you for two hours.

Lesson 126 Have to and to not need to

Do you have to go now?

Yes, I have to leave immediately.

Do you have to get up early tomorrow morning?

Yes, I'll have to get up at six o'clock.

Did you have to take a taxi?

I'm afraid I had to.

I couldn't get a bus.

Hasn't your friend arrived yet?

How long have you had to wait?

I've had to wait for two hours!

Do you have to water the garden?

No, I don't need to water it now.  
It's going to rain.  
Do we have to walk to the station?  
No, we don't need to.  
We can catch a bus.

immediately adv. 立即地

## Lesson 125 Tea for two

[词汇·略]

[课文]

Can't you come in and have tea now, Peter?  
Not yet.  
I must water the garden first.  
Do you have to water it now?  
I'm afraid I must.  
Look at it!  
It's terribly dry.  
What a nuisance!  
Last summer it was very dry, too.  
Don't you remember?  
I had to water it every day.  
Well, I'll have tea by myself.  
That was quick!  
Have you finished already?  
Yes.  
Look out of the window.  
It's raining!  
That means you don't need to water the garden.  
That was a pleasant surprise.  
It means I can have tea, instead.

### Exercises

- 1 Does she have to decide immediately?  
She doesn't have to decide immediately.
- 2 She needn't decide immediately.  
Must she decide immediately?
- 3 We don't have to take a taxi.  
Do you have to take a taxi?
- 4 We needn't take a taxi.  
Must we take a taxi?

### B Examples

- 1 I have to telephone him, too.
- 2 She has to wait for him, too.

3 He has to meet her, too.

4 They have to travel by ship, too.

### C Examples

1 Do you really have to telephone him now?

2 Does Mary really have to wait for him now?

关于后几课的安排

### Lesson 127 A famous actress

#### [词汇]

famous adj. 著名的

actress n. 女演员

at least 至少

actor n. 男演员

read (read/read) v. 通过阅读得知

### Lesson 129 Seventy miles an hour

#### [词汇]

wave v. 招手

track n. 跑道

mile n. 英里

overtake (overtook/overtaken) v. 从后面超越，超车

speed limit 限速

dream v. 做梦，思想不集中

sign n. 标记，牌子

driving licence 驾驶执照

charge v. 罚款

darling n. 亲爱的（用作表示称呼）

### Lesson 131 Don't be so sure!

#### [词汇]

Egypt n. 埃及

abroad adv. 国外

worry v. 担忧

### Lesson 128 He can't be .../He must be ...

He must be a doctor.

He can't be a doctor.

He must have been a doctor.

He can't have been a doctor.

He may be a doctor.

He may have been a doctor.

He must have gone.

He must have visited.

He must be swimming.

He can't be swimming.

He must have been swimming.

He can't have been swimming.

He may be swimming.

He may have been swimming.

#### Exercises

He can't be ill.

He must be tired.

It can't be my new hat.

It must be my old one.

She can't be Danish.

She must be Swedish.

He can't be a dentist.

He must be a doctor.

She can't be forty.

She must be fifty.

It can't be the 20th.

It must be the 21st.

He can't be the youngest.

He must be the oldest.

He can't be reading.

He must be sleeping.

#### Exercises Examples

1 He has to be here at six o'clock.

2 I think he is probably busy.

3 He has to be at the office early tomorrow.

4 I think he is probably sleeping.

5 I think he is probably French.

6 He has to be in France next week.

7 I think he is probably an engineer.

#### B Examples

1 I don't think so. She can't be Italian. She must be Greek.

2 I don't think so. He can't be English. He must be American.

3 I don't think so. They can't be Canadian. They must be Australian.

7 I don't think so. He can't be twenty-four. He must be thirty.

15 I don't think so. It can't be easy. It must be difficult.

18 I don't think so. He can't be reading. He must be sleeping.

19 I don't think so. They can't be listening to the radio. They must be watching television.

20 I don't think so. She can't be retiring. She must be looking for a new job.

Lesson 130 He can't have been .../He must have been ...

He can't have been ill.

He must have been tired.

It can't have been my new hat.

It must have been my old one.

She can't have been Danish.

She must have been Swedish.

He can't have been a dentist.

He must have been a doctor.

She can't have been forty.

She must have been fifty.

It can't have been the 20th.

It must have been the 21st.

He can't have been the youngest.

He must have been the oldest.

He can't have been reading.

He must have been sleeping.

#### Exercises

had to的后边只能跟动词的原形，must have been后可以跟形容词，名词和动词的-ing形式。

I must have been tired at that time.

He must have been a manager.

He must have been driving at 100 kilometers an hour.

1 must have been

2 had to

3 must have been

4 had to

5 had to

6 must have been

#### B Example

1 I don't think they were. They can't have been Canadian. They must have been Australian.

2 I don't think she was. She can't have been Finnish. She must have been Russian.

5 I don't think she was. She can't have been a dentist. She must have been a doctor.

9 I don't think he was. He can't have been seventy-six. He must have been over eighty.

16 I don't think she was. She can't have been old. She must have been young.

18 I don't think they were. They can't have been listening to the radio. They must have been watching television.

19 I don't think she was. She can't have been retiring. She must have been looking for a new job.

20 I don't think they were. They can't have been sitting. They must have been standing.

Lesson 132 He may be .../He may have been ... I'm not sure

Where is Harry?

He may be in his room.

I'm not sure.

Where will he go?

He may go to the cinema.

I'm not sure.

Why is he late?

He may be busy.

I'm not sure.

What is he doing?

He may be reading.

I'm not sure.

Why was he late?

He may have been busy.

I'm not sure.

What was he doing?

He may have been reading.

I'm not sure.

B Examples

1 I'm not sure. They may be Australian.

2 I'm not sure. She may be Russian.

3 I'm not sure. They may be Chinese.

4 I'm not sure. They may have been bakers.

5 I'm not sure. She may have been a doctor.

10 I'm not sure. She may have been under fifty.

17 I'm not sure. He may have been tired.

18 I'm not sure. They may be watching television.

19 I'm not sure. She may have been looking for a new job.

20 I'm not sure. They may be standing.

Lesson 127 A famous actress

[词汇 • 略]

be famous for/ be famous as

She is famous for her beauty.

He is famous as a writer.

She is a famous actress.

She is famous.

at most

I read she was only 29.

[课文]

Karen Marsh

recognize

Can you recognize that woman?

I think I can.

She must be Karen Marsh.

I think so.

I thought so.

A man is sitting beside her.

Who's sitting beside her?

Who's the man beside her?

He must be Conrad Reeves.

He can't be.

I think you're right.

He is her third husband.

He isn't her third husband.

Isn't he her third husband?

No. He must be her fourth or fifth.

Karen Marsh looks old.

Karen Marsh doesn't look old.

Doesn't Karen Marsh look old!

## Lesson 127 A famous actress

Karen Marsh looks old.

Karen Marsh doesn't look old.

Doesn't Karen Marsh look old!

I read she's only twenty-nine, but she must be at least forty.

I'm sure she is.

She was a famous actress when I was at school.

When I was at school, she was a famous actress.

That was a long time ago.

Not that long ago!

I'm not more than twenty-nine my self.

[课文]

Can you **recognize** that woman, Liz?

I think I can, Kate.

**It** must be Karen Marsh, the actress.

I thought so.

Who's that beside her?

**That** must be Conrad Reeves.

Conrad Reeves, the actor?

It can't be.

Let me **have another look**.

I think you're right!

Isn't he her **third** husband?

No. He must be her fourth or fifth.

Doesn't Karen Marsh look old!

She does, doesn't she!

I read she's twenty-nine, but she must be at least forty.

I'm sure she is.

She was a famous actress when I was still at school.

That was a long time ago, wasn't it?

Not that long ago!

I'm not more than twenty-nine myself.

Does Karen Marsh look old!

## Lesson 129 Seventy miles an hour

[词汇]

wave v. 招手

track n. 跑道

mile n. 英里

overtake(overtook/overtaken) v. 从后面超越, 超车

speed limit 限速

dream v. 做梦, 思想不集中

sign n. 标记，牌子  
driving licence 驾驶执照  
charge v. 罚款  
darling n. 亲爱的

wave n. 波  
wave to sb.  
wave sb. goodbye  
That policeman is waving to you.

over-  
overconfident [自负]  
overfish [滥捕]  
overbuild [滥建]  
oversleep [睡过头]  
I was late yesterday. I overslept.  
overeat [吃多了]  
overcharge [收费过多]  
overdress [打扮的太夸张了]

Look, Gary!  
That policeman's waving to you.  
I want you to stop.  
That policeman wants Gary to stop.  
Where are you?  
race match/competition/championship/tournament  
on the race track  
You must have been driving at seventy miles an hour.  
I can't have been driving at seventy miles an hour.  
Did you see the speed limit?  
Didn't you see the speed limit?  
I'm afraid I didn't.  
I must have been dreaming.  
He wasn't dreaming.  
tell sb. to do sth.  
I always tell you to drive slowly.  
My wife told me to drive slowly yesterday.  
at that time/moment  
I was telling him to drive slowly at that time.  
Let me see your driving licence.  
I won't charge you this time.  
You'd better drive slowly next time.  
You'd better not do that again!  
I'll certainly be more careful.  
I told you to drive slowly.  
You always tell me to drive slowly, darling.

take one's advice

You'd better take my advice next time!

[课文]

Look, Gary!

That policeman's **waving to** you.

He **wants you to** stop.

Where do you think you are?

On a race track?

You must have been driving at seventy miles an hour.

I can't have been.

I was **doing** eighty when I overtook you.

Didn't you see the speed limit?

I must have been dreaming.

He wasn't dreaming, officer.

I was telling him to drive slowly.

That's why I didn't see the sign.

Let me see your driving licence.

I won't charge you this time.

But you'd better not do it again!

Thank you.

I'll **certainly** be more careful.

I told you to drive slowly, Gary.

You always tell me to drive slowly, darling.

Well, next time you'd better take my advice!

He is a student. She is beautiful.

表语=主语从句

Let sb. do sth.

tell sb. to do sth.

take one's advice

Lesson 131 Don't be do sure!

[词汇]

Egypt n. 埃及

abroad adv. 国外

worry v. 担忧

go abroad/study abroad

worry about

[课文]

Where are you going to **spend your holidays** this year, Gary?

We may go abroad.

I'm not sure.

My wife wants to **go to Egypt**.

I'd **like** to go there, too. [**would like**]

We can't **make up our minds**.

Will you travel by sea or by air?

We may travel by sea.

It's cheaper, isn't it?

It may be cheaper, but it takes a long time.

I'm sure you'll enjoy yourselves.

Don't be so sure.

We **might** not go anywhere.

My wife always **worries too much**.

Who's going to look after the dog?

Who's going to look after the house?

Who's going to look after the garden?

We **have this problem** every year.

**In the end**, we stay at home and look after everything!

decide to do sth.

make a (big) decision

determine to do sth./determined

I'm determined to do sth.

make up one's mind (to do sth.)

decide to do sth./make a decision

determine to do sth.

be determined to do sth.

I have made up my mind to study English well.

补充材料 P35

1 may come

2 must I do

3 must have been ill

4 may have finished

5 may have been sleeping

6 needn't worry about anything

7 must study hard

8 can't be ... must be

P34

cross my heart 发誓

just for haugh 只是开玩笑

pull one's leg 欺骗某人，开玩笑，逗某人玩儿

miss the bus/boat 错过机会

Least talk, most work. 少说多做

Never do things by halves. 不要半途而废

You are quite right.  
That's my opinion, too.  
That's exactly what I want to say.  
You said it!  
You can say that again.  
For sure! I can't agree more.  
To a certain extent, yes, but ...  
Yes, correct in a sense, but there're other problems.  
I don't think so.  
I'm not sure if I agree with you.  
I'm afraid I have a different opinion.  
I can't say that ...  
I see your point, but ...  
I can't go along with your view.

### P33 Exercises

1 Someone  
2 everywhere/anywhere  
3 everyone  
4 was doing  
5 was reading  
6 is singing  
7 plays  
8 had arrived at  
9 will visit  
10 got to/had begun  
11 was  
12 were watching  
13 keeps/kept/is keeping [I was a student. I went there.]  
14 have never seen

### P32

Excuse me. Do you know the way to ...?  
I want to go to ... Where is it?  
Which is the way to ...  
Can you tell me how can I get to .../ how to ....  
Would you please show me the way?  
Can you direct me to ...  
Is this the way to ...  
Follow your nose and you'll find the station.  
Go along/down/ahead until you reach ...  
Turn left/right at the first turning/crossing  
Take the first turning on your right.  
When you see the traffic lights, turn left.  
Keep going before you come to ...

It's just across the street/around the corner/opposite the shop/next to the school.

You will have to get off at ... stop.

Is it far from here? How far is it?

It's only about ... far (away).

It's not very far. You can walk within ... minutes. It's about five minutes' walk.

You can take No.3 bus to get there.

It will take you half an hour to get there by bike.

#### P31 Exercises

1 Someone/Somebody

2 everywhere

3 nothing

4 None

5 Everyone

6 any [some of the children]

7 anything

8 anyone

1 in

2 on

3 off

4 except

5 to

6 in

7 for [on sale]

8 for

9 like

10 in

#### P30 Exercises

## 补充教材 P28

- Would you/Do you mind if I (did/do...)?
- May/Can I possibly do...?
- Do you think it would be possible for me to...?
- Is it OK if I...?
- I hope you didn't mind my asking, but...
- Please let me...
- I wonder if I could...
- May I have your permission to...?
- Do you think I could...?

## ANSWERING:

- (agreement) : -- Yes ,certainly /of course ,
  - Of course not . Go ahead .
  - That's fine . Why not ?
- (disagreement) : -- I'm afraid you can't ...
  - I'd like to , but ...
  - No way ./Sorry .

## Lesson 133 Sensational news !

- reporter n. 记者
- sensational adj. 爆炸性的, 耸人听闻的 sensational news
- mink coat 貂皮大衣

## Lesson 135 The latest report

- future n. 未来的 in the future future wife future husband
- get married 结婚
- hotel n. 饭店
- latest adj. 最新的 latest news
- introduce v. 介绍

## 直接引语和间接引语:

### 宾语从句:

1. 跟在表示人的情感和心理活动的形容词后面 (afraid, sure )  
be +adj.+that 从句 (当前面是一般现在时, 后面可用任何时态)
2. 说、认为、知道、相信.....前面直接加主语, 后面跟that从句

You are wrong..

I think,"You are wrong."

I think that you are wrong

### 主句是一般过去时:

如果直接引语是一般现在时, 换成一般过去时。

如果直接引语是现在进行时, 换成过去进行时。

如果直接引语是一般将来时, 换成过去将来时。

She said,"I want to go home."

She said (that) she wanted to go home.

My mother told us,"I am making cakes."  
My mother told us she was making cakes.  
She said,"I will make another film next year."  
She said she would make another film next year.

will（任何人称）， shall（第一人称）-->would should：应该

He said,"I have finished my work."  
He said he had finished his word.  
She said,"I helped him."  
He said,"I can come tomorrow."  
He said he could come tomorrow.  
She said,"I may retire next year."  
She said she might retire next year.  
She said,"I have just made a new film."  
She said she had just made a new film.  
She said,"I am going to make another film."  
She said she was going to make another film.  
She said,"I am going to retire."  
She said she was going to retire.  
She said,"I don't want to make another film."  
She told the reporters,"I feel very tired."  
She told the reporters she felt very tired.

### Lesson133 Sensational news!

#### TEXT

Have you just *made a new film*, Miss Marsh?  
Yes, I have.  
Are you going to make another?  
No, I'm not.  
I'm going to retire.  
I feel very tired.  
I don't want to make another film *for a long time*.

Let's buy a newspaper, Liz.

Listen to this!

'Karen Marsh: Sensational News!

**By** our reporter, Alan Jones. **被动语态，省略written**

Karen Marsh arrived **at** London Airport today.

She was wearing a blue dress and a mink coat.

She told me she had just made a new film.

She said she was not going to make another.

She said she was going to retire.

She told reporters she felt very tired and didn't want to make another film for a long time.'

I wonder why!

**wonder=want to know (wonder+宾语从句)**

Lesson 134 He said (that) he... He told me (that) he...

**B Answer these questions**

Example:

I'm tired.—What did he say?

He said he was tired.

1. I'm busy.—What did he say?

He said he was busy.

2. she's cold.—what did he say?

He said she was cold.

3. The book's interesting.—What did she say?

She said the book was interesting.

4. They're hungry.—What did he say?

He said they were hungry.

**C Answer these questions**

Example:

I'm reading.—What did he tell you?

He told me he was reading.

1. I'm working.—What did he tell you?

He told me he was working.

2. she's leaving.—What did they tell you?

They told me she was leaving.

3. They're joking.—What did she tell you?

She told me they were joking.

4. Tom's waiting.—What did he tell you?

He told me Tom was waiting.

**D Answer these questions.**

Example:

I'm finished.—What did he tell you?

He told me he had finished.

1. I've met him.—What did he tell you?

He told me he had met him.

2. I've lost it.—What did he tell you?

He told me he had lost it.

3. It has stopped.—What did she tell you?

He told me it had stopped.

4. She has arrived.—What did they tell you?

They told me she had arrived.

Lesson 136 He said (that) he... He told me (that) he...

**B Answer these questions.**

Example:

I will leave tomorrow.—What did he say?

He said he would leave tomorrow.

1. Penny will open the window.—What did he say?

He said Penny would open the window.

2. I will change some money. –What did she say?  
She said she would change some money.
3. It will rain tomorrow. –What did he say?  
He said it would rain tomorrow.
4. They will arrive later. –What did he say?  
He said they would arrive later.
5. He will repair it. –What did she say?  
She said he would repair it.
6. I will write to him. –What did he say?  
He said he would write to him.

### C Answer these questions

Example:

I can do this Maths problem.—What did he tell you?

He told me he could do this Maths problem

1. I can understand English.—What did he tell you?  
He told me he could understand English.
2. I can recognize him.—What did she tell you?  
She told me she could recognize him.
3. They can afford it.—What did they tell you?  
They told me they could afford it.

### D Answer these questions

Example:

I may go to the cinema. –What did he say?

He said he might go to the cinema.

1. They may arrive tomorrow. –What did they say?  
They said they might arrive tomorrow.
2. I may retire.—What did he tell you?  
He told me he might retire.
3. I may telephone him.—What did she say/  
She said she might telephone him.

## Lesson 135 The latest report

future n. 未来的 in the future future wife future husband

get married 结婚

hotel n. 饭店

latest adj. 最新的 latest news

introduce v. 介绍

### TEXT

Are you really going to retire, Miss Marsh?

I may.

I can't *make up my mind*.

I will have to ask my future husband.

(She said she would have to ask her future husband )

He won't let me make another film. **使役动词** *Let sb. do sth.*

(She said her future husband would not let her make another film )

Your future husband, Miss Marsh?

Yes. Let me **introduce** him **to** you.

His name is Carlos.

We're going to get married next week.

**(She said she couldn't make up her mind .)**

**(She said she would get married next week.)**

**(That's sensational news. He will be her sixth husband.)**

Look, Liz!

Here's another report about Karen Marsh.

Listen: 'Karen Marsh: The latest.

At her London Hotel today Miss Marsh told reporters she might retire.

She said she couldn't make up her mind.

She said she would have to ask her future husband.

She said her future husband would not let her make another film.

Then she introduced us to Carlos and told us they would get married next week.'

That's sensational news, isn't it, Kate?

It certainly is. He'll be her sixth husband!

**Let sb. do sth.**

**Want to do sth.**

**Make sb. do sth.**

**不带to的动词：感官动词（see, watch）**

**see sb. do sth. 看到全过程**

**see sb. doing sth. 看到这个动作正在进行**

I saw him swimming in the river.

I can hear the girl singing in the next room.

**使役动词**

**let sb. do sth. 让某人做某事**

**make sb. do sth. 使某人做某事**

**have sb. do sth. 让某人做某事**

**let, make, have sb. + done**

**如果make这个词用于被动语态，后面要加to : be made to do sth.**

**如果make这个词用于主动语态，后面动词不定式不加to**

I will have my hair cut.

She had her car repaired.

**Help sb.(to)do sth.**

**所有的助动词+do**

**不带to的动词：感官动词（see, watch）；使役动词；所有的助动词**

**Lesson137 A pleasant dream**

football n.足球（英）；橄榄球（美） play football soccer: 英式足球

pool [pu:l] n.赌注 football pool: 足球赌注

win v.赢

world n.世界

poor [puə] adj. 贫穷的

depend v. 依靠(on)

(do)the football pool: 足球赌注

I do the football pool every year. But I never win anything.

They are doing the football pool. They are sure that they will win something this time. I'm sure I will win the football pool this week.

He is not a man who(whom/that) you can depend on.

believe: 相信某人说的话

believe in: 信任某人

He is not a friend you can believe in.

Everything depends on the dream.

### 条件从句

**If: 如果（条件从句）：是否**

**If引导一个从句（一般现在时）：主句用将来时、或情态动词。**

If it rains tomorrow, we won't go out.

We won't go out, if it rains tomorrow.

If you break the window, you will have to pay for it.

We will miss the train, if you don't hurry.

If you feel better, you must go to school.

**marry + sb. 嫁（娶）某人**

If you really love him, you *may* marry him.

**can --表示人的能力**

Julie Brian

What does Julie want to do if they win a lot of money?

See the world.

What does her husband want to do?

First, buy a mink coat for his wife.

Travel round the world.

Stay at the best hotels

Buy a big house

But if they spend all the money what will they do?

They will do the football pools again.

But what does everything depend on?

It's just a pleasant dream!

Julie and Brian are doing the football pools now.

They always do the football pools.

But they never win anything.

They are sure they will win something this week.

If Brian wins a lot of money he will buy a mink coat for his wife.

He says if he wins a lot of money he will buy a mink coat for his wife.

But his wife doesn't want a mink coat.

She says if they win a lot of money she'll see the world.

If they win a lot of money they'll travel round the world.  
If I win a lot of money I'll buy a big house.  
My father says if he wins a lot of money he'll stay at the best hotels.  
If I spend all the money I'll do the football pools again.  
Brian says if he spends all the money he'll do the football pools again.  
But everything depends on 'if'!  
It's only a pleasant dream.

### TEXT

Are you *doing the football pools*, Brian?

Yes, I've nearly finished, Julie.

I sure *we'll win something this week*.

You always say that, but we never win anything!

What'll you do if you win a lot of money?

If I win a lot of money I'll *buy you a mink coat. /buy sth. for sb.*

I don't want a mink coat!

I want to see the world.

All right.

If we win a lot of money we'll travel round the world and we'll stay at the best hotels.

Then we'll return home and buy a big house in the country.

We'll have a beautiful garden and...

But if we spend all that money we'll be poor again.

What'll we do then?

If we spend all the money we'll try and win the football pools again.

It's a pleasant dream but everything depends on 'if'!

### Lesson 138 If.....

#### EXERCISES A: P280

1. If he misses the bus, he'll take a taxi.
2. If he doesn't sell his old car, he won't buy a new one.
3. If they offer me more money, I'll work less.
4. type the letter/type it (by) myself  
If she doesn't type the letter, he'll type it himself.
5. come home early/play in the garden  
If the children come home early, they'll play in the garden.
6. If I am ill tomorrow, I won't go to work.
7. If I go to the party, I'll enjoy myself/have a good time.
8. to tell you the truth/tell him the truth  
If he asks me, I'll tell him the truth.
9. If it rains tomorrow, my mother'll stay at home.

#### EXERCISES C:

rich: 富有的

He is rich. If he is rich, he can work less.

1. live abroad  
I can live abroad, if I'm rich.
4. If they are rich, they can have a long holiday.
6. If you are rich, you can offer your boss a job.

7. If I am rich, I'll fly to Tokyo.
3. He can buy a new house, if he is rich.

### Lesson 139 Is that you, John?

extra adj. 额外的

overseas adj. 海外的，国外的

engineering n. 工程

company n. 公司

line n. 线路

#### 宾语从句

1. 由that引导的从句，that可以省略；
2. 知道、希望、相信等动词，前面一般现在时，后面任何时态；
3. If/whether（是否）引导，如果后面是选择疑问句，用whether；特殊疑问词what/why/where，把疑问句变成陈述句语序。

I wonder/do you want to go home

I wonder if you want to go home.

Do you need help?

My wife wonders if you need help.

What are you doing?

I want to know what you are doing.

What are you talking about?

I don't understand what you are talking about.

Where are you going tomorrow?

I want to know where you are going tomorrow.

When will the train leave?

I don't know when the train will leave.

#### EXERCISES B: P284

1. I want to know if you are late. Tell me if you are late.  
I want to know why you are late. Tell me why you are late.
2. I want to know if you are dirty. Tell me if you are dirty.  
I want to know why you are dirty, Tell me why you are dirty.

#### EXERCISES C:

Example:

1. I want to know if you are writing. Tell me if you are writing.  
I want to know what you are writing. Tell me what you are writing.
2. I want to know if you are cooking. Tell me if you are cooking.  
I want to know what you are cooking. Tell me what you are cooking.

#### EXERCISES D:

Example:

1. I want to know if Tom got up early. Tell me if Tom got up early.  
I want to know when Tom got up. Tell me when Tom got up.
2. I want to know if Tom arrived late. Tell me if Tom arrived late.  
I want to know when Tom arrived. Tell me when Tom arrived.
3. I want to know if Tom did his homework yesterday.  
Tell me if Tom did his homework yesterday.  
I want to know when Tom did his homework. Tell me when Tom did his homework.

4. I want to know if Tom had a bath yesterday. Tell me if Tom had a bath yesterday.

I want to know when Tom had a bath. Tell me when Tom had a bath.

### Lesson 139 Is that you, John?

#### TEXT

*Is that* you, John?

Yes, speaking.

Tell Mary we'll *be late for* dinner this evening.

*I'm afraid* I don't understand.

Hasn't Mary told you?

She *invited* Charlotte and me *to dinner* this evening.

I said I would *be at your house* at six o'clock, but the boss wants me to *do some extra work*..

I'll *have to* stay at the office.

I don't know when I'll finish.

Oh, and *by the way*, my wife wants to know if Mary needs any help.

I don't know what you're talking about.

That is John Smith, isn't it?

Yes, I'm John Smith.

You are John Smith, the engineer, aren't you?

That's right.

You *work for* the Overseas Engineering Company, don't you?

No, I don't.

I'm John Smith the telephone engineer and I'm repairing your telephone line.

安排：第一册基本框架：重点、语法、难点、基本句型

第二册难度大：重点注意基本的语法框架

注意：课前看笔记

### Lesson 141 Sally's first train ride

excited adj.兴奋的

get on 登上

middle-aged adj.中年的

opposite prep.在...对面

curiously adv.好奇地

funny adj.可笑的，滑稽的

powder n.香粉

compact n.带镜的化妆盒

kindly adv.和蔼地

ugly adj.丑陋的

amused adj.有趣的

smile v.微笑

embarrassed adj.尴尬的，窘迫的

**被动语态：(被字句)**

**主动语态：(把字句)**

My father repaired my car yesterday.

主+动+宾国（注：这种动词基本是及物动词。不及物动词基本不用于被动语态）

主+be+动词的过去分词+（by）

My car was repaired by my father yesterday.

一般现在时：主 + am/is/are + 动词的过去分词

They invite me to dinner every week.

I am invited to dinner by them.

We invite them to attend the meeting every year.

They are invited to attend the meeting by us every year.

They invite my daughter to the children's party every week.

My daughter is invited to the children's party every week.

一般过去时：主 + was/were + 动词的过去分词

My grandfather bought the piano many years ago.

The piano was bought by grandfather many years ago.

My sister broke these glasses.

These glasses were broken by my sister.

现在完成时：主 + have/has + 动词的过去分词

主 + have/has + been + 动词过去分词

My father has already repaired my car.

My car has already been repaired by my father.

They are building the house.

The house is being built by them.

They will set up a new school next year.

一般将来时：主 + will + 动词原形

主 + will + be + 动词的过去分词

The house is being built by them.

They will set up a new school next year.

A new school will be set up (by them ) next year.

过去进行时：主 + was/were + doing

主 + was/were + being + 动词的过去分词

They were building the house at this time last year.

The house was being built by them at this time last year.

过去完成时：

They had finished the project by the end of last year.

The project had been finished by the end of last year.

情态动词：情态动词 + 动词原形

情态动词 + be + 动词的过去式

You must finish the work before five o'clock.

The work must be finished before five o'clock.

## B: P288

Examples:

regularly: 定期的

1. Some airs it regularly. It is aired regularly.

2. Someone cleans them regularly. They are cleaned regularly.

EXERCISES: P292

## TEXT

Last week, my four-year-old daughter, Sally, *was invited to* a children's party.

I *decided to* take her by train.

Sally was very *excited* because she had never travelled on a train before.

Sally sat near the window and asked questions about everything **she saw**.

Suddenly, a middle-aged lady **got on the train** and sat opposite Sally.

'Hello, little girl,' she said.

Sally did not answer, but looked at her **curiously**.

The lady **was dressed in** a blue coat and a large, funny hat.

After the train had left the station, the lady opened her handbag and **took out** her powder compact.

She then began to make up her face.

'Why are you doing that?' Sally asked.

'To make myself beautiful,' the lady answered.

She **put away** her compact and smiled kindly.

'But you are still ugly,' Sally said.

Sally was amused, but I was very embarrassed!

### Lesson 143 A walk through the woods

surround	v. 包围	place	v. 放
wood	n. 树林	throw (threw, thrown)	v. 扔, 抛
beauty spot	n. 风景点	rubbish	n. 垃圾
hundred	n. 百	count	v. 数, 点
city	n. 城市	cover	n. 封面 v. 覆盖, 跨越
through	prep. 穿过	piece	n. 碎片
visitor	n. 参观者, 游客, 来访者	tyre	n. 轮胎
tidy	adj. 整齐的	rusty	adj. 生锈的
litter	n. 杂乱的东西	among	prep. 在...之间
litter basket	废物筐	prosecute	v. 依法处置

be surrounded by: 被.....包围

beauty: 美人, 美丽 (抽象名词)

百、千、百万.....前面有具体的数字, 后面不加-s, 如果是不确定的, 后面要加-s (hundreds of 数以百计的)

throw away: 把.....扔掉 counter: 柜台

computer: 计算机 compute: 计算 (根据已有的数据)

be covered with: 被.....覆盖 She covered sixty miles yesterday.

from cover to cover: 从头到尾地读

The snow covered the village yesterday.

**cover sth. with** It's cold. Please cover the baby with a coat.

### TEXT

I live in a very old town which is surrounded by beautiful woods. (定语从句)

It's a famous beauty spot.

**On Sundays**, hundreds of people come from the city to see our town and to **walk through** the woods. (每逢星期日) (走过)

Visitors have been asked to keep the woods clean and tidy. (被动语态)

Litter baskets have been placed under the trees, but people still throw their rubbish everywhere.

Last Wednesday, I **went for a walk** in the woods. (去散步)

What I saw made me very sad. (主语从句)

I counted seven old cars and three old refrigerators.

The litter baskets were empty and the ground **was covered with** pieces of paper, cigarette ends, old tyres, empty

bottles and rusty tins.

**Among** the rubbish, I found a sign which said, ‘Anyone who leaves litter in these woods will be prosecuted!’

### 补充材料 P3

--See you (soon/later/next time/...)

--Good night. /goodbye./Bye-bye.

--It’s nice to see you.

--How time flies! I have to be going now.

--I must go off/be off/be leaving.

--I suppose I’d better go.

--I’m really enjoying meeting you.

--It’s a pleasure to be with you here, but...

--I can’t believe that time has come to say goodbye to you.

--Thank you for all you’ve done for me.

--Let’s keep in touch./Don’t forget to drop me a line.

--All the best to you./Remember me to your...

--We must get together again soon.

### 补充材料 P4

--during the dog days        在非常热的天；倒霉的日子

--get one’s goat            惹某人生气

--black and blue            遍体鳞伤

--as busy as a bee          象蜜蜂一样的忙碌

--a green hand              生手；新手

--rob Peter to pay Paul      借债还债

--Every dog has his/its day. 凡人皆有得意日

### 补充材料 P6

--get/feel hot under the collar 气得青筋暴跳

--a lucky dog/live a dog’s life 幸运儿/生活不如意

--Love me, love my dog.    爱屋及乌

--be blue in the face        生气

--chewing gum              口香糖

--on top of the world        （表示一个人）非常的幸福

--Walls have ears.          隔墙有耳

--I’m/My name is.....

--May I introduce myself?/Allow me to introduce myself.

**Allow sb. to do sth.: 允许某人做某事**

--This is...../Come and meet my friend.

--May I introduce.....to you?

--I’d like you to know/meet.....

--Sorry, I don’t think we’ve met. I wonder if you can tell me/let me know your name.

--Can/could you introduce yourself?/Would you like to make yourself known to others?

--Sorry, I didn’t catch your name. Would you please tell me your name?

### 补充材料 P7

--follow your nose	凭着你的感觉
--be led by the nose	被牵头鼻子走
--make one's mark	使某人出名
--man-eater	食人兽；性感女性
--money to burn	很有钱的
--make one's mouth water	让某人对某事垂涎三尺
--meet one's Waterloo	某人遭到了失败
--Many hands make light work.	众人拾柴火焰高；人多力量大

Lady-killer: 性感男子；有魅力的男子

### 补充材料 P8

--Be on one's high horse	趾高气扬
--Fight tooth and nail	奋力作战
--White lie	善意的谎言
--Eye for eye	以牙还牙
--Cup of tea	喜爱之物
--Face the music	面对现状
--Out of sight, out of mind	眼不见心不烦
--No pains, no gains.	不劳无获
--The outsider sees the most of the game.	旁观者清

--引出话题

By the way, .....

I forget to mention that.....

--交流中做出反应

You can smile, nod your head and have the eye contacts.

Also you can say like these:

Good for you!/Really?/You don't say! /yes. /I think so. /I see.

Please tell me more.

Glad to hear that. /Sorry to hear that.

--适时打断

I'm sorry to disturb you, but may I ask a question?

Let's be open here! Can we have a chat before?

### 补充材料 P9

#### 电话实用句式Telephone conversation:

- Hello, is that..... ( speaking )?. Here is..... ( speaking ). Is.....there?
- This is .....( speaking ). Who's that?
- May I know who is calling, please?
- May I speak to/have a word with ...? /I'd like to speak to ...
- Hello! Can I help you? Whom do you want to speak to?
- All right. Hold on please.
- Sorry, he/she isn't in. May I take a message for you?
- Would you like him to call you back? Could you leave your number?
- Would you mind calling back later? ( *Mind doing sth.* 后面永远跟ing )
- I'll tell him to ring back.

- I'm sorry, there's no one here by the name.
- I'm afraid you've got/dialed the wrong number.

### 补充材料 P10

- Be left in the cold                    被冷落
- A bed of roses                        幸福，非常地开心
- Go bananas                            发疯
- A black sheep                         败家子
- A piece of cake                        小菜一碟
- Do it well or not at all.              做就把它做好，否则就不要做。
- Look before you leap.                三思而后行。
- Easier said than done.                说起来容易，做起来难。

on time : 准时

in time: 及时

in no time: 不时的，立刻

off and on: 时断时续

- What's the time (by your watch )?
- What time do you have? /What time is it?
- It's at ...o'clock. (past/to/half past )
- What's the date today? /What was the date yesterday?
- What day is it today? /What's the day today?
- It's time for+n. (doing)... /It's time to+v. (原形)... /It's time that...
- Time is limited/running out.
- I suppose it's about time (that )...
- When is the meeting? /When does the meeting begin?

### 补充材料 P12

- Better half                                对妻子、或丈夫的戏称
- green thumb                              园艺技能
- be all ears                                全神贯注
- be all thumbs                             笨手笨脚的
- kiss something goodbye                恋恋不舍的把某物给别人
- keep one's mouth out of sth.           不要多管闲事
- Failure is the mother of success.      失败是成功之母
- All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.      光工作不玩耍聪明的孩子也变傻

- Thank you (Thanks ) very much/a lot.
- Many thanks. /Great. /You're so kind.
- I'm much/most grateful to you (for ...)
- That's very kind/good/nice of you to ...
- You've so thoughtful.
- I can never thank you enough.
- Thank you. That's the nicest thing anyone's said to me all day.
- No thanks necessary. /Not at all. /That's all right. /That's OK.
- Forget (about ) it. /Don't mention it. /You're welcome.
- It's my pleasure.
- I'm pleased /glad to be at you service.

-- A small piece of cake.

-- Nothing much.

Welcome to China.

### 补充材料 P16

道歉与回答：

-- Sorry for being late. /I'm sorry (that)...

-- I'm awfully sorry for that!

-- Sorry to have taken up so much of your time.

-- Sorry to have given/brought you so much trouble.

-- It's my fault. I apologize...

-- I'm apologizing for that!

(Informal)

-- I do beg you pardon, sir/madam.

-- Sorry, I didn't mean to ...

-- I promise that it won't happen again.

-- I hope you're not upset with me.

-- It was wrong of me to ...

It was wrong of me to use your bike without your permission.

Replies:

-- It doesn't matter. /You're forgiven.

-- That's quite all right. Forget it .

-- Never mind. It can't be helped.

### 补充材料 P17

地道情景表达：

谈论天气

-- What's the weather like?

-- It's a fine day today. The sun is shining.

-- It's fine/windy /sunny/rainy/cloudy/cold/hot/warm/cool.

-- I bet it's going to rain soon.

-- Is the weather changeable here?

-- What a good/nice/beautiful/wonderful/pleasant day!

-- It's been raining cats and dogs. (倾盆大雨)

-- Really cold today. I'm freezing.

-- What a terrible day! It made me down.

-- It has been awfully ho this week. During the dog days.

I can do nothing at all. I can't *bear* it any more.

(忍受)

在餐馆里

-- What can I do for you? /Can I help you?

-- Can I take your order?

-- Will/Would you like something to drink/to eat?

-- What would you like to drink/to eat?

-- Would you care for ...?

-- I'll have .../ I'll go for .../I'll give ...a try.

-- I'd quite like ...to drink/to eat.

-- Mm, it sounds/smells/tastes good/delicious/excellent.

- Here's the menu. What would you suggest?  
-- You do the ordering for me?  
-- I don't think I'll bother with...  
-- I think I'll give ...a miss.  
-- Thanks. I've had enough. /I'm full.  
-- Good to see you. May I join you?  
-- Let me foot the bill.  
-- No, you be my guest.  
-- Well, let's go Dutch.

### 补充材料

1. He usually gets up at six o'clock.
2. He's reading a book at the moment.
3. She is drinking tea in the garden.
4. They often go to the shops in the morning.
5. We do our homework at night.
6. After doing their homework, they can go to bed.
7. It's very cold in winter here.
8. There it is! It's in front of you.
9. Put that bag on the armchair. What's in it?
10. He has a bad cold, so he must stay in bed.

1. at 2. at 3. in 4. in 5. at 6. to 7. in 8. in 9. in 10. in

1. A ship is going on the river. And a plane is flying over the river. Some children are looking at the ship and the plane.
2. Two boys are jumping under the tree.
3. The couple are sitting on the chairs. They are reading in the living room.
4. We're going to listen to the radio. What are you going to do?
5. The nice flowers are from my friend. Today is her birthday.
6. Please put the dishes on the *sideboard*. (餐具柜)

1. on at 2. up 3. on 4. to 5. for 6. in/on

1. Jimmy is (be) in bed today. He doesn't feel (not, feel) well. He looks (look) ill. But he doesn't have (not, have) a temperature. We must call (must, call) the doctor. I think (think) today he can not go (not, go) out with us, but tomorrow he can go (can, go) together.
2. Yesterday, I was (be) at the butcher's. You were (be) at the barber's. And Tom was (be) absent from school.
3. They don't have (have, not) any water. Have/Do you have (have) you any?

1. is doesn't feel looks doesn't have must call think not go can go

2. was were was 3. don't have have

### 补充材料 P21

airhead

笨蛋

cold fish

冷漠的人

get one's teeth into

强制执行

dear John letter	绝交信
hot air	空话
Time and tide wait for no man.	岁月不等人
There is no use crying over spilt milk.	不要为打翻的牛奶而哭泣
He is rich that has few wants.	知足者常乐

在医院

You don't look very well. You'd better see a doctor.  
What's wrong/the matter with you?  
I've caught a bad cold/cough.  
Don't worry. /Take it easy. There is nothing serious.  
I don't feel very well. I have a toothache/headache/fever  
You look awful/terrible/pale.  
You must stay/remain in bed. You need a good rest.  
How are you feeling now?  
My...hurts. /I've a sore throat. /I've got a **pain(痛苦)** in my back/leg/...  
I'm afraid you need an X-ray.  
I'll take your temperature. Be patient, please.  
I'll give you some medicine. /I'll write down a **prescription (药方)** .  
When shall I take the medicine?  
How often should I take these pills? /How many tablets should I take each time?  
It doesn't matter. You'll feel better soon.  
You look fine/in the pink.

### 补充材料 P22

#### Translation 自己做

1. I am going to visit a friend    five o'clock this afternoon.
2. Every day she visits her friends    the afternoon.
5.    the way to school, she lost her handbag.
6. You were    the race last week, weren't you?
7. We go to that church    Monday.
8. My son went abroad    1986.
9.    spring. It's mild in our country.
10. Tens of thousands    people went to see the exhibition.
11. Her brother was absent    school last week.
12. We're going to stay    my mother's .
- 13 You arrived    here at three o'clock.
14. You can't speak    me like that!

1. at 2. in 5. On 6. at/in 7. on 8. in 9. In 10. of 11. from 12. at 13. / 14. to

at the race : 在赛场      in the race : 在比赛中    be absent from : 缺席

### 补充材料 P23

#### 表达喜好

like :

- What's your favorite...?
- What do you like best?

- I like...best. /I love.../I'm pleased with...
- I feel like doing.../I would like/love to...
- What I most enjoy is ...
- I'm fond of .../I'm crazy about... **be fond of : 喜欢**
- There's nothing I enjoy more than...

#### Dislike :

- I don't like...at all.
- I'm afraid I'd rather do.../I don't like...
- I can't stand /put up with...
- I hate...

#### 补充材料 P24 Translation:

#### 补充材料 P25

- What can I do for you, madam?
- How do you like this one? /What about...?
- I'm looking for... /I'm thinking of buying...
- What do you want to buy for your wife?
- What size? /What color?
- Size five. /Green.
- These are in fashion this year. Don't you want a try?
- I prefer the blue one to the red one. /I like ...better.
- It looks good. Can I try it on? Where's the fitting room?
- It suits you. /Perfect!
- Come on. You are kidding. I'm no longer in my twenties.
- Oh, it's a pity. It looks beautiful, but it doesn't fit me.
- You can have a ...% discount. **percent 百分数 (号)**
- That's great. The price is **reasonable**. **合理的**
- I'll take them. Can you pack them together for me?
- Comes...Yuan in all.

#### 补充材料 P27

#### 经典口语

- Can/Could you help me? /Give me a hand, please.
- Can you lend me your hand? I need your help.
- Do/Would you mind doing...for me?
- Do you mind if I do...?
- Do me a favor, please. /Would you do me a favor to do...?
- Would you please do...?
- I hate to say, but I was wondering if I could ...?
- I should be grateful if you could...
- Would you be so kind to do...?
  
- What can I do for you? /Can I help you?
- If you need my help, just call me please.
- It's my honor to be your servant.

#### 补充材料 P30

1. You've made \_\_\_ (many ) mistakes than Jim.

- Her car is \_\_\_\_ (new ) than mine.
- My boxes are \_\_\_\_\_ (big ) of all.
- That film is \_\_\_\_ (good ).
- I've got \_\_\_\_ (little ) ink than you ,but I've got \_\_\_\_ (many ) pens than you.
- I can give you some \_\_\_\_ (some ) butter than before.
- John is \_\_\_\_ (clever ) than Bob. Bob is \_\_\_\_ (clever ) than Tom. Tom is not as \_\_\_\_ (clever ) as John. John is \_\_\_\_\_ (clever ) of the three.
- This first story is \_\_\_\_\_ (interesting ) than the second one. The third story is \_\_\_\_\_ (interesting ) than the first. And the fourth is \_\_\_\_ (interesting ) than the second. So the fourth is \_\_\_\_\_ (interesting ) of all.
- The Sahara is \_\_\_\_\_ (big) desert in the world.

1. **more** 2. **newer** 3. **the biggest** 4. **good** 5. **less more** 6. **more** 7. **cleverer cleverer clever the cleverest** 8. **more interesting more interesting more interesting the most interesting** 9. **the biggest**

### 补充材料 P30

- It's a fine day, \_\_\_\_?
- She has been to the Great Wall, \_\_\_\_?
- The woman says that she \_\_\_\_ ill last week.
- Those people didn't come from France, \_\_\_\_?
- The boss told Miss Jones \_\_\_\_ (type ) a letter for him.
- I want to talk \_\_\_\_ you.

1. **isn't it** 2. **hasn't she** 3. **was** 4. **did they** 5. **to type** 6. **with/to**

### 补充材料 P36

- He said he \_\_\_\_ (see ) the film already.
- She said they \_\_\_\_ (return ) to Paris the next day.
- I told the boy \_\_\_\_\_ (stand up ) at once. **tell sb. to do sth.**
- They told us we \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the first prize.
- It's said that the earth \_\_\_\_ (go) around the sun.
- He said when we \_\_\_\_ (come) in, he \_\_\_\_ (read) a book.
- That lady \_\_\_\_ (sell) her jewellery last month.
- Till yesterday, that lady \_\_\_\_\_ (sell out) all her jewellery.
- There \_\_\_\_ (be) an important meeting this evening.

1. **had seen** 2. **would return** 3. **to stand up** 4. **won/had won/would win** 5. **goes**  
6. **came was reading** 7. **sold** 8. **had sold out** 9. **will be**

### 补充材料 P37

- They say \_\_\_\_ they will go to church tomorrow.
- The old lady asked \_\_\_\_ time it was. **ask sb. to do sth.**
- Jim asked his father \_\_\_\_ buy him a new schoolbag.
- My wife wants to know \_\_\_\_ you need some help.
- He asked her \_\_\_\_ she was eager to go abroad.
- \_\_\_\_ you drop the vase, you'll pay for it .
- If you promise it won't happen again, I \_\_\_\_ forgive you.

8. I want to know \_\_\_\_ season you like best.
9. He asked me \_\_I would like to go with him.
10. The girl decided to buy the pen \_\_\_\_ was shown on the shelf.
11. You're that person \_\_ I'm looking for.

1. (that) 2. what 3. to 4. if 5. if 6. If 7. will 8. which 9. if 10. which 11. !

### 补充材料 P38

1. This house \_\_\_\_\_ (build ) last year.
2. That film \_\_\_\_\_(show) already.
3. If the window \_\_\_\_ (break), You'll pay for it.
4. When the missing girl \_\_\_\_\_(find), she was sleeping.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_(make) up my mind before she telephoned me.
6. At eight o'clock yesterday morning, he \_\_\_\_\_(read) the English book.
7. While she \_\_\_\_\_(do) her housework, her husband gave her a sweet kiss.
8. I found the students forgot \_\_\_\_\_(lock) the door when they left the room.

1. was built 2. has been shown 3. is broken 4. was found 5. had made  
6. was reading 7. was doing 8. to lock

1. Last night, the man had been introduced to others in the party.
2. She said she would win the match on next week.
3. Did the pretty woman made her mind?
4. I didn't want to do *nothing*.
5. Do you know that when I can know my marks of those exams.
6. I want to ask where are we going.
7. She is looking for the key of her room.
8. They have never seen the film, haven't they?
9. -- It isn't a fine day, is it? -- *Yes*, it isn't a fine day.
10. I knew that the earth wasn't round.
11. Those people are Japanese.
12. My brother didn't like coffee. Neither do I.
13. I lost my watch, so I want to buy it.
14. He is the man that I served yesterday.
15. He was arriving home when I rang him.

1. had been introduced →过去时 was introduced 2. 去掉 on 3. made → make
4. nothing → anything 5. that when 去掉that
6. where are we going → where we are going. 7. of → to
8. never 表示否定 haven't they → have they 9. Yes → No 回答应该前后一致
10. 客观真理 wasn't → isn't 11. Japanese → Japanese
12. 前后时态应该一致 Neither do I → Neither did I.
13. 如果在同一个句子中出现一个it代词，一般指代上面出现的。It → one
14. 正常 15. 正常

### 所有格

a friend of mine

在表示“的”时，一般是：’s（人）/of...（物）

the window of the house

a friend of my father

双重所有格

a, the, some, any 限定词

my, mine, his, her 所有格代词

It happened to a friend of mine.

### 定语从句

who, whom 的问题

先行词+宾语，主语（人）时，who, whom 均可用

一般来说，做主语时用who；做宾语时可用who, whom, that, 可以省略。

宾语后面不及物动词的介词提前，只能用whom

### 第一册的知识点

- (1) 时态：现在进行时、一般现在时、一般现在完成时、一般将来时、过去进行时、过去完成时  
复习指标：概念、动词结构、时态结构、时间、动词变化  
动词变化：规则变化和不规则变化
- (2) 问句：一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句、反意疑问句、否定疑问句（doesn't she like you?）
- (3) 从句：宾语从句、定语从句（限定性定语从句）、表语从句、表语从句（That is why I don't like English.）
- (4) 倒装句：neither, so 的倒装
- (5) 感叹句：what, how
- (6)
- (7) 省略句：省略重复出现的相同成分
- (8) 引语：直接引语和间接引语
- (9) 直接宾语和间接宾语
- (10) 形容词的用法
- (11) 情态动词：must, can, may, need
- (12) 介词：at, in, on, from, along
- (13) 动词不定式做宾语或宾语补足语的用法
- (14) 限定词a, the, some ...
- (15) 冠词的用法a/an, the
- (16) 名词的种类，名词的数格

### 第二册的知识点

- (1) 虚拟语气

单词难度：

新概念第一册：单词表890多单词：总数1500左右

新概念第二册：单词表890多单词：总数1500左右

语法难度：

新概念新版第二册，练习很重要

学习建议：最好背诵新概念二册的课文

新概念四册属于文章欣赏

新概念二、三册应该学完整

新概念三册的语法难度相当非专业的六级，适合大学生学习

建议新概念二册学习两遍

根据个人的情况，安排两次学习的进度，以巩固学习的知识。

听、说、读、写的训练

听力：精听和泛听，进行一套完整的系统训练

写作：练习写作时注意避免重复

口语：从基础开始练习，注意扩充词汇